**MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE
TRANSPORTATION
MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION**

AUGUST 2002

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE
TRANSPORTATION
MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

Page

PREFACE

The purpose of the MTP is to provide a descriptive, performance-oriented training guide to assist leaders in training their units. The MTP contains tasks that support the unit's mission(s) outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders must use their METL to identify which collective tasks in the MTP must be trained. Task standards in the MTP are the Army's standards for executing those tasks. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This MTP also contains Appendix A (Combined Arms Training Strategy) and Appendix B (Battlefield Operating Systems). This MTP is in full alignment with and is part of the United States Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP applies to TOE 55406L, Movement Control Battalion.

Unless otherwise stated, the masculine gender is used for both men and women.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to: Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, Transportation Training Division, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-1511.

ENVIRONMENTAL TRAINING AND INTEGRATION

The US Army environmental strategy into the 21st century defines the Army's leadership commitment and philosophy for meeting present and future environmental challenges. It provides a framework to ensure that environmental stewardship ethic governs all Army activities. As an integral part of all Army missions, the Army's environmental vision is to be a national leader in environmental and natural resource stewardship for present and future generations. The Army's environmental vision statement communicates the Army's commitment to the environment.

Soldiers and leaders are expected to serve as the Army's basic environmental stewards and have a professional and personal responsibility to understand the Army's environmental program.

Soldiers and leaders must understand their specific duties and responsibilities concerning protection of the environment, and comply with environmental laws and regulations. These are delineated in TC 3-34.489. Commanders must stay current of federal, state, local, and HN laws and must apply whichever are the most stringent.

Stewardship of our environment is part of our mission to maintain a trained and ready Army. Leadership is the key to success. Each leader in the chain of command, including the NCO support channels, is responsible for ensuring that the Army environmental strategy is implemented and that environmental stewardship is an integral part of everything we do. Each soldier, civilian, and family member is a steward of the environment. America's Army shares with all Americans their values of democracy, equal opportunity, and wise use of environmental assets. The American people expect the Army to manage the resources entrusted to it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AND HAZARD AWARENESS NOTICE

DEATH or serious injury may result if personnel fail to observe safety precautions.

WARNINGS

FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING

Fuel is flammable and toxic to eyes, skin, and respiratory tract. Skin/eye protection is required. Avoid repeated/prolonged contact. Use only in well ventilated areas. Keep away from open flames or other sources of ignition. Post **FUEL FLAMMABLE/NO SMOKING** signs around the area. Suitable fire extinguisher must be present.

Fuel on clothing can be fatal if ignited by a static discharge. If fuel gets on your clothes, leave the refueling area as soon as possible and wet clothes with water before taking them off. In extreme cold conditions, clothes should not be wet; instead, ground yourself to a piece of grounded equipment by taking hold of it before taking off your clothes. Be sure that you wash your skin with warm, soapy water.

Spilled fuel creates a flammable, vapor-air mixture and fire can take place. Stop refueling immediately if fuel spill occurs.

FROSTBITE

Touching cold metal with exposed skin will cause skin to bond with metal. Gloves are required when touching cold metal objects. Do not touch cold metal parts with bare hands.

SOLVENT HAZARD

Dry cleaning solvent, P-D 680, Type III, used to clean parts is potentially dangerous to personnel and property. Eye protection is required. Avoid repeated and prolonged skin contact by wearing rubber or nonporous gloves when handling solvents or material wet with dry cleaning solvent. Wash hands with soap and water immediately after exposure and use a lanolin based skin cream to prevent skin drying. Do not use near open flame or excessive heat. Flash point of solvent is 138 degrees F. Do not work with solvent in a closed area. Be sure there is good ventilation or the solvent vapors will build up in the air and become a poisonous mixture, which can cause physical injury or even death.

ELECTRICAL HIGH VOLTAGE CAN KILL YOU

Electrical high voltage cannot be seen, but it can kill you. Electricity is unlike most other dangerous things you can come in contact with because it gives no warning and no symptoms; and its effects are immediate. It can kill you, render you unconscious, or severely burn you. To ensure your safety and that of other maintenance personnel, always observe the following precautions:

- **DO NOT** perform any maintenance on electrical equipment unless all power is removed.

- **BE CERTAIN** that there is someone assisting you who can remove power immediately.

- **ALWAYS** place **POWER OFF** warning tags on power supply switches so that no one will apply power while you are performing maintenance.

- FOR **ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION**, refer to **FM 21-11**.

COMPRESSED AIR HAZARD

Compressed air can blow dust into the eyes. Wear eye protection. Do not exceed 30 psi at the nozzle. *FIRST AID* instructions are given in *FM 21-11*.

CARBON MONOXIDE (EXHAUST GAS) CAN KILL YOU

Carbon monoxide is without color or smell, but can kill you. Breathing carbon monoxide produces symptoms of headache, dizziness, loss of muscular control, a sleepy feeling, and coma. Brain damage or death can result from heavy exposure. Carbon monoxide occurs in the exhaust fumes of burning heaters and internal combustion engines. Carbon monoxide can become dangerously concentrated under conditions of no ventilation. Precautions must be followed to ensure operator's safety when combustion engines are in operation.

- **OPERATE** with the exhaust pipes unobstructed.

- **DO NOT** operate the powered module with a known exhaust (combustion air) leak.

- **BE ALERT** at all times during operating procedures for carbon monoxide poisoning. If exposure is present, *IMMEDIATELY* evacuate personnel to fresh air.

- **BE AWARE** the field protection mask used for NBC attack **WILL NOT** protect you from carbon monoxide poisoning.

THE BEST DEFENSE AGAINST CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING IS GOOD VENTILATION.

JEWELRY

Jewelry can catch on equipment and cause injury, or may short across an electrical circuit and cause severe burns or electrical shock. Remove rings, bracelets, wristwatches, and neck chains before working around or on the unit.

HOT COMPONENTS

Contact with hot components can cause burns. Allow unit to cool down before attempting service, inspection, or maintenance activity.

STEEL BANDING

Steel banding, cut under tension, can snap free and cause injury. Leather gloves and faceshield are required.

FUEL SPILL

Fuel is toxic and can cause injury to personnel and damage equipment. Improper positioning of external fuel source can cause the internal fuel tank to overflow. Properly positions external fuel source.

NOTE

Report all hazards. If at any time you detect a hazard, it is your responsibility to report the hazard to ensure that it is corrected. If you detect a "new" or "suspected new" hazard, particularly due to equipment installation, modification, or repair, it is your responsibility to report through your chain-of-command to ensure that a **SAFETYGRAM** is submitted to the US Army Aviation and Troop Command, Safety Office. This will ensure that this hazard will be investigated, publicized, or corrected, as required.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Environmental damage has many wide-ranging consequences. The complete success of the tactical mission depends on your environmental awareness. Leaders and soldiers must be aware of the ramifications of their actions on the environment, which, in turn, reflects upon the overall mission. Prevention of spills and improper disposal of hazardous materials and hazardous waste is everyone's responsibility. Know the proper procedures for preventing and reporting oil or fuel spills IAW your local unit SOP.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. GENERAL. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the following factors.

    a. Unit's METL.

    b. Chain of command training directives and guidance.

    c. Training priorities of this unit.

    d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIALS. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented unit training program that is part of the higher echelon training program. This unit's training program consists of the following supporting publications:

    a. ARTEP 63-412, Corps Support Command.

    b. ARTEP 55-406, Mission Training Plan for the Transportation Movement Control Battalion.

    c. STPs for the appropriate MOSs and skill levels.

    d. MQS manuals for the company grade officers.

Figure 1-1 illustrates the relationship of these supporting publications.
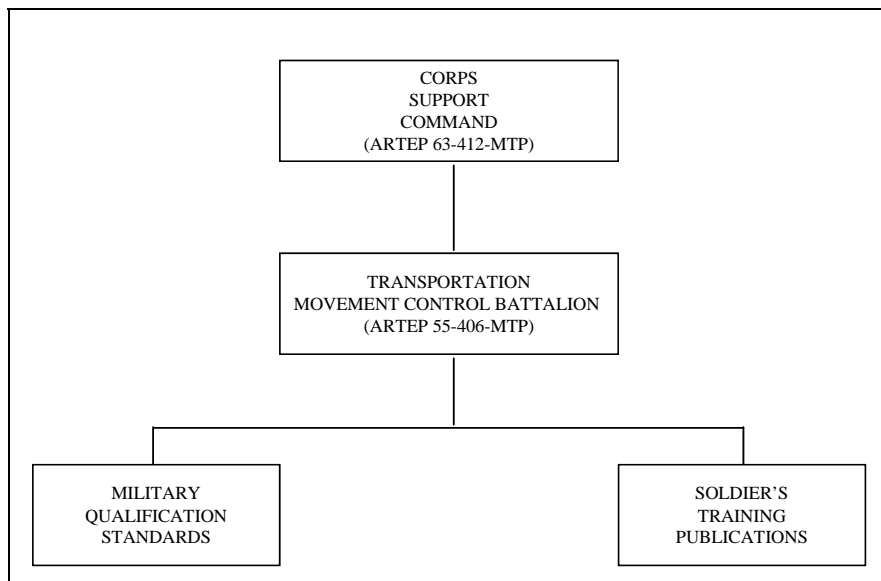
Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship Diagram

1-3. CONTENTS. This MTP is organized into six chapters.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP for establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between mission and collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of an FTX and its supporting STXs. They provide training information and a canned scenario. They can also serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all tasks the unit must master to effectively perform its mission. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps and performance measures. Each T&EO is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for developing an external evaluation.

1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS. This MTP concerns specified missions found in the TOE and implied missions, which the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical wartime mission is the focal mission for this unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for this unit.

a. Critical Wartime Mission. To provide movement management and highway regulation.

b. Missions.

(1) Supervise Deployment.

(2) Plan Movement Control Support.

(2) Supervise Relocation.

(3) Supervise Establishment.

(4) Provide Movement Control Support.

(5) Supervise Force Protection.

(6) Supervise Redeployment.

c. Each task can be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EO. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the movement control battalion to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the Corps Support Command to evaluate each movement control battalion's ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

d. Leader tasks supporting the unit's missions are trained through STPs and MQS training, battle simulations, and by execution of this unit's mission.

e. Individual tasks that support the unit's tasks are mastered by training to standards in the appropriate STP.

1-5. TRAINING PRINCIPLES. This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

a. Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team. Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and service teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together.

b. Train as You Fight. The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less-than-perfect results initially and to demand realism in training. They must integrate realistic conditions, such as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and cold weather.

c. Use Appropriate Doctrine. Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn non-standard procedures. Therefore, units must train on peacetime training tasks to the Army standards in the MTPs, STPs, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

d. Use Performance-Oriented Training. Units become proficient in performing critical tasks and missions by practicing them. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, including simulators, simulations, and training devices, must be included in the strategy.

e. Train to Challenge. Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. Train to Sustain Proficiency. Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and the ITEP are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques. To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during training events.

h. Train to Maintain. Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training, designed to keep equipment in the fight, is as equally important to soldiers as being experts in the use of the equipment. Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers. The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

1-6. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY. CATS is designed to provide Army leaders a strategy that states the rationale and justification for requesting all Army training resources in both institutions and units. It provides training management guidance for institutional commandants and unit commanders to plan and execute required training to established Army standards. Institutional strategies are prescriptive and define the mandatory training requirements for qualifying soldiers and leaders to specified levels of competency in respective functional specialties. The training program developed and executed by this unit to train to standards in its wartime missions is also a component of the CATS. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. The major focus of CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard.

a. The unit training strategies in CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training. While the "menu" may reflect an optional guide for training to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute such a strategy.

b. This unit's training strategy, contained in Appendix A, is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training this unit to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP the tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies provide the means to train these tasks through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. This unit's training strategy consists of two separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused strategy, which permits this unit to train to standard. The elements of this unit's training strategy are as follows:

(1) CSS unit training strategy. This strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and to depict those resources that are required to support training events. CSS unit training strategies must address both the technical (mission) and tactical (maneuver/survival) training needs of CSS soldiers and units.

(2) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A critical element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. These gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before proceeding to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run methodology. For example, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks contained in the STX must be trained to standard prior to conducting the FTX. Standards must be specific so that a commander can assess the preparedness of his soldiers or unit(s) to proceed to more complex training events. By using training gates, the unit's METL and the commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in a specific unit's training strategy.

e. When developing the unit's training plan, the commander identifies the training tasks from the MTP required to train his METL. He also uses the training strategy found in Appendix A to develop a battle-focused training plan that integrates and links METL-derived training tasks with CATS training events.

1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING. This MTP helps the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

a. The commander assigns missions and tasks for training based on his METL and training guidance from the higher HQ. Trainers must plan and execute training in support of this guidance.

b. The review of the missions and tasks outlined in Chapter 3 should determine whether the FTX and STXs will support, or can be modified to support, the commander's guidance. If it does not or needs to be modified, a review of the matrix in Chapter 2 will identify all the critical collective tasks that the unit must master to perform a specific mission.

c. The commander and subordinate leaders must prioritize all tasks. Because there is never enough time to train everything, training must focus on the unit's greatest training challenges and its most difficult sustainment skills.

d. The commander must integrate tasks into the training schedule according to the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in priority and frequency they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how he can best use multiechelon training.

(3) Determine the training location(s).

(4) Determine training responsibilities and his involvement.

(5) Organize his needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. The commander must approve the list of tasks to be trained and schedule them on the training schedule.

f. The commander must determine the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. The commander must keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY).

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders and soldiers use risk assessment/management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibilities, institutionalizes commander's review of operational safety and leads to decision-making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations and all other types of operations. Safety begins with readiness, which determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preference that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including required equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. The chain of command responsibilities include the following:

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate performance.

(b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Staff.

(a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and in developing risk reduction options when planning training.

(b) Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assesses safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluates safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldier.

(a) Reports unsafe conditions and acts and corrects the situation when possible.

(b) Establishes a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Takes responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Works as a team member.

(e) Modifies own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are as follows:

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (see Figure 1-2, page 1-8) is a tool for assessing hazards.

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

			HAZARD PROBABILITY				
			FREQUENT	LIKELY	OCCASIONAL	SELDOM	UNLIKELY
			A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH				
	CRITICAL	II			HIGH		
	MARGINAL	III			MEDIUM		LOW
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV					

Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into plans, OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs, and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow-up and after action. Develop the lessons learned.

e. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that result in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment/management is the mechanism with which incidences of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are as follows:

(1) Direct-fire control plan failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land navigation failures. These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat identification failure. These failures include gunners or pilots who are unable to distinguish thermal/optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe the following consequences:

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit's leadership.

(2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Over-supervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-T factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural/historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazards. Analyzes potential severity of environmental degradation using environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3, page 1-10). Severity of environmental

degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental assessment matrixes.

     c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

     d. Brief chain of command. Brief chain of command (to include installation environment office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

     e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

     f. Supervise. Supervise/enforce environmental protection standards.

Environmental Area					Rating:	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicles systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Environmental Risk Assessment Worksheet	5	4	3	2	1	0

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threaten/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate Level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate Level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Cdr
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM Cdr

Risk Categories

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

1-10. BATTLE FOCUS. Battle focus derives peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. It guides the planning, execution, and assessment of the unit training program to ensure it trains as it is going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the entire training process and is used by commanders to allocate resources for training based on wartime mission requirements. It helps the commander recognize that the unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task due to time or resources constraints. However, a successful training program is achievable by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of vital tasks that are essential to mission accomplishment.

1-11. SAFETY. A well-trained unit is normally accident-free. Although accidents can occur through no fault of the soldier, most accidents result from unsafe acts of inadequately trained, unsupervised, or complacent personnel. While conducting the training in this publication, leaders must incorporate safety into every task. Training is effective when soldiers are confident in their abilities to perform the tasks and assured that they will not be injured or cause damage to their equipment. Leaders and trainers must ensure SOPs for safety are complied with during all facets of training. They must also ensure that on-the-spot corrections are made when any unsafe practice is observed.

1-12. EVALUATION. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards, which the unit must meet for each task.

    a. Evaluation can be internal or external. An internal evaluation can be conducted at any level and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are formal and are conducted by the COSCOM.

    b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task each time it is performed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback, and every evaluation is a training session. Because leaders frequently do not evaluate continuously, you must ensure that trainers and leaders continually evaluate training as it is being done.

    c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. Outside evaluators usually make this unfeasible for higher level exercises. AARs should be planned at frequent, logical intervals during exercises. This is a proven technique, which will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind and will prevent reinforcement of bad habits.

    d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIX

2-1. GENERAL. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (see Table 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Table 2-1. Mission Identification Table

Mission Title
Supervise Deployment
Plan Movement Control Support
Supervise Relocation
Supervise Establishment
Provide Movement Control Support
Supervise Force Protection
Supervise Redeployment

2-2. TRAINING MATRIX: MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS. This matrix (Table 2-2, pages 2-2 through 2-8) identifies the mission and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS, which are indicated by an asterisk in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pamphlet 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks

Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	MISSIONS						
	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
*DEVELOP INTELLI-GENCE Provide Intelligence Support (63-1-4051)			X		X	X	
*DEPLOY/ CONDUCT MANEUVER Perform Battalion Advance/ Quartering Party Activities (63-1-4015)			X	X			X
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements (63-1-4018)			X				
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters (63-1-4019)				X			
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) (63-1-4020)				X			
Direct Deployment Alert Activities (63-1-4850)	X						
Establish the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4851)	X						

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

	MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
Operate the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4852)	X						
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities (63-1-4853)	X						X
Update Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4854)	X				X		
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support (63-1-4855)	X						
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support (63-1-4856)	X						
Coordinate Family Assistance Support (63-1-4857)	X						
Coordinate Deployment Training Support (63-1-4858)	X						
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions (63-1-4859)	X						

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	MISSIONS						
	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
Provide De-ployment Logistics Support (63-1-4860)	X						
Perform De-ployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4861)	X						
Coordinate Onward Movement (63-1-4862)	X						
Coordinate Rear Detach-ment Support (63-1-4863)	X						
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4864)	X						
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeploy-ment (63-1-4865)							X
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/ Order (63-1-4866)							X
Provide Redeployment Support (63-1-4867)							X
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4868)							X
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4869)							X

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

	MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
Coordinate Home Station Activities (63-1-4870)							X
Direct Integration Activities (63-1-4871)	X						
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment (63-1-4872)	X						
*PROTECT THE FORCE Supervise Operations Security Program (63-1-4038)			X	X	X		
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations (63-1-4040)						X	
*PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAIN-MENT Conduct Command Religious Support Program (63-1-4044)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures (63-1-4303)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-1-4326)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

	MISSIONS						
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
*EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL Process Road Clearance Requests (55-1-0040)					X		
Develop Movement Program (55-1-0041)					X		
Develop a Highway Regulation Plan (55-1-0047)					X		
Establish Movement Control Operations (55-1-0049)					X		
Provide Command and Control of Movement Control Battalion (55-1-0051)					X		
Receive the Mission (63-1-4000)		X			X		
Conduct Mission Analysis (63-1-4001.55-0001)		X			X		
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (63-1-4002)		X					
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action (63-1-4003)		X	X				

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

MISSIONS							
Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
Develop Intelligence Estimate (63-1-4004)		X					
Develop Personnel Estimate (63-1-4005)		X					
Develop Logistics Estimate (63-1-4006)		X					
Develop Support Operations Estimate (63-1-4007)		X					
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operation) Estimate (63-1-4008)		X					
Prepare Operations Plans/Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009)		X					
Develop Road Movement Order (63-1-4010)		X	X				
Develop Occupation Plan (63-1-4011)		X	X				
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations (63-1-4012)				X			
Plan Rear Operations (63-1-4014)		X				X	
Establish Communications (63-1-4017)				X			

Table 2-2. Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks (continued)

Collective Tasks and T&EO Numbers	MISSIONS						
	Supervise Deployment	Plan Movement Control Support	Supervise Relocation	Supervise Establishment	Provide Movement Control Support	Supervise Force Protection	Supervise Redeployment
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4037)					X		
Maintain Communications (63-1-4041)				X	X	X	
Provide Command and Control (63-1-4045)		X	X	X	X	X	
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center (63-1-4050)				X		X	
Direct Response to Threat Actions (63-1-4052)						X	
Direct Area Damage Control Operations (63-1-4053)						X	
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order (63-1-4873)	X						
Plan Battalion Redeployment (63-1-4874)							X

CHAPTER 3

MISSION OUTLINE

3-1. GENERAL. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks.

3-2. MISSION OUTLINE. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the ability of this unit to perform its missions. The mission outline, Figure 3-1, provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

FTX C-A							
PROVIDE MOVEMENT MANAGEMENT AND HIGHWAY REGULATION							
STX C-1		STX C-2		STX C-3		STX C-4	
SUPERVISE DEPLOYMENT		PLAN MOVEMENT CONTROL SUPPORT		SUPERVISE RELOCATION		SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT	
63-1-4850	63-1-4860	63-1-4044	63-1-4005	63-1-4051	63-1-4303	63-1-4015	63-1-4326
63-1-4851	63-1-4861	63-1-4303	63-1-4006	63-1-4015	63-1-4326	63-1-4019	63-1-4012
63-1-4852	63-1-4862	63-1-4326	63-1-4007	63-1-4018	63-1-4003	63-1-4020	63-1-4017
63-1-4853	63-1-4863	63-1-4000	63-1-4008	63-1-4038	63-1-4010	63-1-4038	63-1-4041
63-1-4854	63-1-4864	63-1-4001.55-0001	63-1-4009	63-1-4044	63-1-4011	63-1-4044	63-1-4045
63-1-4855	63-1-4871	63-1-4002	63-1-4010		63-1-4045	63-1-4303	63-1-4050
63-1-4856	63-1-4872	63-1-4003	63-1-4011				
63-1-4857	63-1-4044	63-1-4004	63-1-4014				
63-1-4858	63-1-4303		63-1-4045				
63-1-4859	63-1-4326						
	63-1-4873						

Figure 3-1. Transportation Movement Control Battalion Missions Outline

FTX C-A					
PROVIDE MOVEMENT MANAGEMENT AND HIGHWAY REGULATION					
STX C-5		**STX C-6**		**STX C-7**	
PROVIDE MOVEMENT CONTROL SUPPORT		**SUPERVICE FORCE PROTECTION**		**SUPERVISE REDEPLOYMENT**	
63-1-4051	55-1-0047	63-1-4051	63-1-4014	63-1-4015	63-1-4869
63-1-4854	55-1-0049	63-1-4040	63-1-4041	63-1-4853	63-1-4870
63-1-4038	55-1-0051	63-1-4044	63-1-4045	63-1-4865	63-1-4044
63-1-4044	63-1-4000	63-1-4303	63-1-4050	63-1-4866	63-1-4303
63-1-4303	63-1-40001.55-0001	63-1-4326	63-1-4052	63-1-4867	63-1-4326
63-1-4326	63-1-4037		63-1-4053	63-1-4868	63-1-4874
55-1-0040	63-1-4041				
55-1-0041	63-1-4045				

Figure 3-1. Transportation Movement Control Battalion Missions Outline (continued)

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

4-1. GENERAL. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP has two types of exercises: FTX and STX. These exercises assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating this MCB's mission proficiency. This MTP has one FTX and seven STXs (see Table 4-1).

4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISES. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the MCB to train the critical wartime mission. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the STXs.

4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISES. The STX is a short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercise used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX does the following functions:

      a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.

      b. Allows training to focus on identified weaknesses.

      c. Allows the MCB to practice the missions before the critical wartime mission.

      d. Saves time by providing a majority of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

4-4. SAFETY. During any training exercise, soldiers and leaders must be safety conscious. Evaluators and trainers have the responsibility to ensure that all training is conducted within established safety constraints. Prior to each exercise, all personnel will be briefed on specific safety measures that are to be taken during execution.

Table 4-1. Training Exercises

EXERCISE	TITLE	PAGE
FTX C-A	Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation	4-2
STX C-1	Supervise Deployment	4-13
STX C-2	Plan Movement Control Support	4-19
STX C-3	Supervise Relocation	4-25
STX C-4	Supervise Establishment	4-31
STX C-5	Provide Movement Control Support	4-37
STX C-6	Supervise Force Protection	4-42
STX C-7	Supervise Redeployment	4-47

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

FTX C-A

PROVIDE MOVEMENT MANAGEMENT AND HIGHWAY REGULATION

1. Objective. This FTX is designed to provide the MCB commander, staff, and key leaders with training in their critical wartime mission to command control and supervise MCTs. The MCB staff and key leaders must become proficient in the supervision of deployment, battalion plans, relocation, establishment, and sustainment operations. The MCB plans, coordinates, and manages movement programming, highway regulation, and transportation support for the moving of personnel and materiel into, within, and out of the Corps area. The MCB also provides assets visibility and maintains intransit visibility of tactical and nontactical moves. The MCB must also be proficient in the supervision of force protection activities and redeployment of subordinate elements to home station. The tasks that are executed during this exercise are listed in Table 4-2, pages 4-5 through 4-7.

2. Interface.

    a. This FTX supports the COSCOM FTX, Support Corps Logistics Operations.

    b. The following STXs support the MCB FTX.

        (1) Supervise Deployment (STX C-1).

        (2) Plan Movement Control Support (STX C-2).

        (3) Supervise Relocation (STX C-3).

        (4) Supervise Establishment (STX C-4).

        (5) Provide Movement Control Support (STX C-5).

        (6) Supervise Force Protection (STX C-6).

        (7) Supervise Redeployment (STX C-7).

    c. This FTX is supported by the following FTXs:

        (1) Detachment Headquarters FTX, Provide Unit Administrative and Logistical Support.

        (2) MCT FTX, Provide Movement Control Support.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform MCB missions. Training in the following areas will improve the MCB ability to perform its missions:

(1) Planning, coordinating, and managing transportation support; establishing command and control for all assigned and/or attached MCTs; providing asset visibility and maintaining intransit visibility of tactical and nontactical moves; and self-defense operations. This training may be conducted in garrison and local training areas by one of the following methods.

(a) MAPEX combined with a sand table exercise. A map of the actual area where the FTX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the terrain should be used, if possible.

(b) TEWT.

(c) COMEX/situation awareness exercise to practice battle command information procedures and operations to support CSS operations using available automation systems.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit in leaders by the following activities.

(a) Aggressive MCB sports and physical fitness program.

(b) Leaders or individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of the MCB's heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends after restoration of the MCB at home station. Figure 4-1 (page 4-8) illustrates the general sequence of task performances in this exercise. Table 4-3, pages 4-9 and 4-10, is a suggested scenario.

c. This exercise may be conducted under several options. These options are not all-inclusive, and can be exercise in various combinations

(1) Conditional options, in support of:

(a) Offensive operations.

(b) Defensive operations.

(c) Retrograde operations.

(d) Day or night operations.

(2) Operation options.

(a) Provide movement control support to provide onward movement of personnel, cargo, and equipment.

(b) Supervise force protection activities (develop base defense plan, plan battalion area tactical operations, and direct response to threat actions).

(c) Supervise redeployment operations.

4. General Situation.

a. The MCB provides command and control including planning, direction, and supervision of attached and assigned MCTs. The HQ staff is charged with supervision of deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations and the relocation and establishment of the MCB bases and facilities in a new area. It is also responsible for planning, coordinating, and managing highway regulation and transportation support for the Corps. The MCB has been alerted for deployment to a potentially hostile country. The MCB must deploy to provide command and control and to supervise MCTs in support of CSS operations. The MCB personnel will deploy by air and sea as part of a higher element. OPFOR is capable of inflicting Levels I, II, and III attacks and employing weapons of mass destruction at sea and aerial ports of debarkation, staging and marshaling areas, and along main supply routes. The MCB is prepared for OPFOR activity during RSO&I operations. While establishing MCB base and facilities the MCB must still manage movement programming, highway regulation, and transportation support for the Corps. The COSCOM will provide guidance to the MCB, when Level I, II, and III threat is anticipated. Upon notification of a Level II/III attack, the MCB will cease operation and supervise force protection activities within their assigned area in the Corps rear. Force protection activities will continue until the COSCOM coordinates battle hand over to military police or a tactical combat force and the hand over has been completed.

b. This exercise is conducted under all day and night environmental conditions. The MCB will operate under threat of NBC attack, attacks by ground or air, indirect fire, and EW.

c. This exercise is conducted under threat of Level I, II, and/or III attacks.

d. The MCB should be prepared to relocate as the situation dictates.

e. The MCB should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the Corps.

5. Special Situation.

a. The MCB commander has issued the following guidance: "Be prepared to deploy the MCB to the vicinity at _____ grid coordinates as part of the higher echelon move. Be prepared to support CSS operations within _____ hours of arrival. Coordinate with the COSCOM for special requirements."

b. The MCB commander issues the following instructions to his staff. "We are deploying with the COSCOM. Begin your planning process for deploying subordinate elements, relocating the MCB to _____ grid coordinates, establishing MCB area, providing movement control support, and conducting force protection activities. This exercise will begin with receipt of a warning order and ends on notification from me."

Table 4-2. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating FTX C-A

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-14
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-17
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)	63-1-4020	5-20
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-23
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-26
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-29
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-32
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-37
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-40
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-43
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-47
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-50
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-52
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-1-4860	5-55
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4861	5-61
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-1-4862	5-64
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-1-4863	5-67

Table 4-2. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4864	5-70
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-1-4865	5-73
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4866	5-76
Provide Redeployment Support	63-1-4867	5-79
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4868	5-84
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4869	5-87
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-1-4870	5-90
Direct Integration Activities	63-1-4871	5-91
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-1-4872	5-97
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-101
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-104
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Process Road Clearance Requests	55-1-0040	5-122
Develop Movement Program	55-1-0041	5-124
Develop a Highway Regulation Plan	55-1-0047	5-126
Establish Movement Control Operations	55-1-0049	5-128
Provide Command and Control of Movement Control Battalion	55-1-0051	5-131
Receive the Mission	63-1-4000	5-134
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001.55-0001	5-136
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	63-1-4002	5-139
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-143

Table 4-2. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating FTX C-A (continued)

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Develop Intelligence Estimate	63-1-4004	5-146
Develop Personnel Estimate	63-1-4005	5-150
Develop Logistics Estimate	63-1-4006	5-154
Develop Support Operations Estimate	63-1-4007	5-158
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operation) Estimate	63-1-4008	5-162
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	63-1-4009	5-168
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-173
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-180
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-184
Plan Rear Operations	63-1-4014	5-187
Establish Communications	63-1-4017	5-192
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4037	5-196
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-209
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-212
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-216
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-219
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-223

Figure 4-1. General Scenario Illustration

Table 4-3. Sample Movement Control Battalion FTX C-A scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Deployment	
1	Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	10 min
2	Direct Deployment Alert Operations	10 min
3	Establish the Emergency Operations Center	2 hr
4	Operate Emergency Operations Center	8 hr
5	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	2 hr
6	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	2 hr
7	Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	2 hr
8	Coordinate Family Assistance Support	1 hr
9	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	1 hr
10	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	1 hr
11	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	2 hr
12	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hr
14	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
15	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	2 hr
16	AAR	1 hr
	Plan Movement Control Support	
1.	Conduct mission analysis	3 hr
2	Develop staff estimates	1 hr
3.	AAR	1 hr
4	Select course of action	1 hr
5.	AAR	1 hr
6.	Preparation of OPLAN/OPORD	2 hr
7.	Briefing of OPLAN/OPORD	1hr
8.	Approval of OPLAN/OPORD	15 min
9.	AAR	1 hr
10.	Preparation of annexes	1 hr
11.	Approval of annexes	15 min
12.	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Relocation	
19	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	2 hr
20	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
21	Issue FRAGO	10 min
22	Road March	1 hr
23	Cross SP	10 min
24	Threat Interdictions	40 min
25	Continue Road March	1 hr
26	Cross RP	10 min
27	AAR	1 hr

Table 4-3. Sample Movement Control Battalion FTX C-A scenario (continued)

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Establishment	
28	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	2 hr
29	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion HQ	1 hr, 30 min
30	Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center	1 hr, 30 min
31	AAR	1 hr
	Provide Movement Control Support	
32	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
33	Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation	8 hr
34	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Force Protection	
35	Receive Threat Interdictions	30 min
36	AAR	1 hr
37	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
38	Defense Responses	30 min
39	Damage Assessment	1 hr
40	Restoration of Support	1 hr
41	AAR	1 hr
	Supervise Redeployment	
42	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	15 min
43	Coordinate Reconstitution of the MCB for Deployment	1 hr
44	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
45	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	1 hr
46	Provide Redeployment Support	1 hr
47	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	1 hr
48	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	1 hr
49	Coordinate Home Station Activities	1 hr, 30 min
50	Final AAR	2 hr
	TOTAL TIME:	81 hr, 15 min
NOTE 1: Pre-exercise sleep, messing, and travel time to and from training areas must be added to the exercise.		
NOTE 2: Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.		
NOTE 3: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.		

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs. The MCB commander, who will be the trainer and also the primary evaluator, will conduct this exercise. If possible, there should be an evaluator with each staff section. At least one other evaluator is required with the OPFOR.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Level II/III threat activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used or the trainer/OC can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicle and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. Each trainer and OC needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on local training area, it is desirable to have a training area with minimum dimensions of 250 meters by 250 meters. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 20 kilometers.

e. Master Incident List. During the FTX, MIL is essential to drive the MCB's action.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-4 shows the suggested support requirements for this FTX.

Table 4-4. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX C-A

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56 mm (Blank)	150 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	2/per section/OPFOR
Simulator, Arty.	6/OPFOR
Blank Adapters	1/per wpn
MILES	one set per soldier/equipment
CS Grenades	3/OPFOR

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA items authorized.

Table 4-4. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX C-A (continued)

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per section
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each

OTHER

Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attacks	1 each
M256 Chemical Detector Kit(Training)	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this FTX are suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-1

SUPERVISE DEPLOYMENT

1. Objective. This STX trains the MCB commander, staff, and key personnel in supervising the deployment subordinate elements to a new theater of operations. This STX also provides the commander and key leader with practice in planning; controlling and coordinating subordinate elements deployment activities. The MCB must become proficient in planning, preparing, and supervising deployment operations.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

b. This STX support the COSCOM STX, Direct COSCOM Deployment Operations.

c. This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment of subordinate elements to a new theater of operations as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding elements STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

d. This STX supports the Detachment HQ and MCT STX, Deploy Unit to a New Theater of Operations.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and implement deployment (land, sea, or air) of the MCB as a part of an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, and 100-17; DOD Regulation 4500.9-R, Part III; and ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

(3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

(4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Tips for training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing deployment operations.

(b) Leaders should review the MCB and higher echelon deployment SOPs.

(c) Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where deployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for leader training.

(1) After the MCB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks listed in Table 4-5, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Various MCB category levels.

(c) Different mode of transportation.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdiction.

(e) With or without NBC conditions.

(f) Day or night.

(g) Movement over single or multiple routes.

(2) The MCB must become proficient in doctrine, planning and executing deployment before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB commander, in coordination with COSCOM, secures deployment guidance/orders, pertinent plans/SOPs, and reviews deployment contingency plans.

b. Subordinate detachment commander and MCT leaders updates MCB deployment plans in coordination with MCB and installation support elements.

c. The COSCOM provides the MCB with the deployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a deployment warning order and ends when MCB arrives in a new area of operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-6, page 4-16. Table 4-6 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The MCB is currently at its home station or mobilization site. The MCB will deploy with COSCOM to a new theater of operations.

b. Detachment commander and MCT leaders provide personnel and equipment status reports.

c. The supporting installation provides required deployment support.

d. The APODs, SPODs, and the OCONUS location are identified.

e. This exercise is conducted in all day and night environmental conditions.

Table 4-5. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-1

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-19
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-22
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-25
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-28
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-33
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-36
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-39
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-43
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-46
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-48
Provide Deployment Logistics Support	63-1-4860	5-51
Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4861	5-57
Coordinate Onward Movement	63-1-4862	5-60
Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	63-1-4863	5-64

Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4864	5-67
Direct Integration Activities	63-1-4871	5-91
Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment	63-1-4872	5-94

Table 4-5. T&EOs from Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-1 (continued)

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-108
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-112
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-116
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-169

Table 4-6. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-1 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Deployment	
1	Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	10 min
2	Direct Deployment Alert Operations	10 min
3	Establish the Emergency Operations Center	2 hr
4	Operate Emergency Operations Center	8 hr
5	Supervise Battalion Deployment Activities	2 hr
6	Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	2 hr
7	Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	2 hr
8	Coordinate Family Assistance Support	1 hr
9	Coordinate Deployment Training Support	1 hr
10	Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	1 hr
11	Provide Deployment Logistics Support	2 hr
12	Update Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
13	Coordinate Rear Detachment Support	2 hr
14	Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities	2 hr
15	Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities	2 hr
16	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	29 hr, 20 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.

6. FRAGO. The MCB commander issues the following FRAGO: "We have been alerted to deploy OCONUS as part of a higher element. New OCONUS location is the vicinity of _____ grid coordinates. Begin your planning process to prepare the MCB for deployment. Be prepared to deploy within _____ hours. I will conduct an AAR after the conclusion of this STX."

7. Support Requirements.

    a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. Because of the detail required in evaluating the intricate steps of deployment, a minimum of one OC per staff section is required. The trainers and OCs monitor and evaluate accuracy of the data, the soundness of planning and recommendations, and the thoroughness of coordination.

    b. Opposing Force.

        (1) The OPFOR is not required for this situational training exercise.

        (2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

        (3) The MILES can be used or the OCs can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

    c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio for the OCs are needed.

    d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area for setting up operations, which is 1.5 by 1.5 kilometers. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

    e. Master Incident List. During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

    f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-7 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-7. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-1

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
M9mm (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 per section
	2 per OPFOR
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 per OPFOR

ATWESS   2 per LAW

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.

Table 4-7. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-1 (continued)

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions.
Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-2

PLAN MOVEMENT CONTROL SUPPORT

1. Objective. This STX trains the battalion commander, staff, and key leaders with practice in developing operations plans in support of the COSCOM. The staff must become proficient in analyzing the mission; developing intelligence, personnel, logistics, plan movement control support, and the operations (commander's) estimates; and developing the OPLAN/OPORD. The staff must be able to successfully plan the MCB relocation; establishment of subordinates and force protection. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and preparing those operations plans necessary to provide MCT support in various types of COSCOM operations.

2. Interface.

      a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

      b. This STX supports the COSCOM STXs: Plan Tactical-Level CSS and Limited CHS Support; Coordinate Tactical-Level CSS and Limited CHS Support; and Coordinate COSCOM Internal Support Requirements.

           (1) Plan Tactical-level CSS and limited CHS.

           (2) Plan Corps Logistics and Health Support.

           (3) Plan Sustainment of COSCOM Internal Support Structure.

      c. This STX can be used as a CPX to develop plans.

      d. This STX has no corresponding STX at company level.

3. Training.

      a. Leader Training.

           (1) This STX can be used as part of a CPX or FTX.

           (2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 3-90.3, 101-5, and 101-5-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

           (3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact STX area is used.

           (4) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout the STX using the real time capability of battlefield functional are control system architecture. CSSCS supports the decision making process with COAs analysis. The staff can analyze up to three COAs for a 5 day

period. Variables include combat posture, unit task organization miles traveled, and geographical region.

(5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement.

(b) The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where movement and establishment will be performed.

(d) The leader tasks, which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (MCB commander or XO) with this STX, are analyze MCB mission, provide planning guidance, establish priorities for relocation, approve movement order/annex, supervise activities of staff sections, and supervise movement.

b. Tips for leader training.

(1) After the MCB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks listed in Table 4-8, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Various MCB category levels.

(c) Different mode of transportation.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdiction.

(e) With or without NBC conditions.

(f) Day or night.

(g) Movement over single or multiple routes.

(2) The MCB must become proficient in doctrine, planning and executing planning movement control support before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

      a. The senior trainer completes the mission analysis (developed using the decision support features of CSSCS) and issues guidance based on COSCOM commander's guidance or based on his own judgment.

      b. Staff estimates and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

      c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

      d. This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends when the MCB movement plans are prepared. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-9, page 4-22. Table 4-6 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-8. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-2

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Receive the Mission	63-1-4000	5-134
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001.55-0001	5-136
Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield	63-1-4002	5-139
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-143
Develop Intelligence Estimate	63-1-4004	5-146
Develop Personnel Estimate	63-1-4005	5-150
Develop Logistics Estimate	63-1-4006	5-154
Develop Support Operations Estimate	63-1-4007	5-158
Develop Supporting Commander's (Operation) Estimate	63-1-4008	5-162
Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes	63-1-4009	5-168
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-173
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-180

Plan Rear Operations   63-1-4014   5-187

Provide Command and Control   63-1-4045   5-206

Table 4-9. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-2 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Plan Movement Control Support	
1.	Conduct mission analysis	3 hrs
2	Develop staff estimates	1 hr
3.	AAR	1 hr
4	Select course of action	1 hr
5.	AAR	1 hr
6.	Preparation of OPLAN/OPORD	2 hr
7.	Briefing of OPLAN/OPORD	1hr
8.	Approval of OPLAN/OPORD	15 min
9.	AAR	1 hr
10.	Preparation of annexes	1 hr
11.	Approval of annexes	15 min
12.	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	13 hr, 30 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.

5. General Situation.

      a. The MCB is deployed in a combat zone. The MCB mission is to provide movement management and highway regulation.   The MCB commander has received a warning order from the COSCOM.

      b. The COSCOM commander's planning guidance and restated mission guidance have been received and reviewed. The MCB commander has provided his planning guidance.

      c. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends when the OPORD/OPLAN is prepared. AARs are conducted after completion of staff estimates, after a course of action is selected and after the OPORD/OPLAN briefing. Table 4-9 is a suggested scenario.

6. FRAGO. The commander is conducting a meeting with his staff and key leaders. The following guidance is given:

      "The COSCOM anticipates conducting an operations within -------hours. The operations are estimated to last approximately---------hours and will commence in the vicinity of ------------; our job is to plan, coordinate, and manage movement programming, highway regulation, and transportation support for the Corps.

7. Support Requirements.

      a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

      b. Opposing Force.

          (1) OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

          (2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

          (3) MILES can be used or the OC can assess damage to the MCB.

      c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When an OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

      d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size is needed to support the number of vehicles and equipment. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 20 kilometers. Vegetation and terrain should allow cover and concealment for facilities, vehicles, and equipment.

      e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

      f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-10 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-10. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-2

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm SAW (blank)	600 rounds/wpn
5.56mm (blank)	120 rounds/wpn
7.62mm (blank)	400 rounds/wpn
40mm (blank)	768 rounds/wpn
M9mm (blank)	30 rounds/wpn
Blank adapter	1 set/wpn
MILES	1 set/wpn
Smoke grenades	4 per section
	2 per OPFOR
Simulators, hand grenades	2 per man
Simulators, hand grenades	10 per OPFOR
ATWESS	2 per LAW

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.

Table 4-10. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-2 (continued)

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-3

SUPERVISE RELOCATION

1. Objective. This STX trains the battalion commander, staff, and key leaders with practice in planning and coordinating the relocation of subordinate elements and sustainment resources. The staff must become proficient in selecting routes, directing reconnaissance and advance/quartering party operations, coordinating required support for the move, monitoring the movement of subordinate elements, and coordinating transportation support for the Corps while moving. This STX combines the elements of column formations, movement control, situation awareness, communication, and defense procedures necessary to accomplish relocation to a new operating site.

2. Interface.

      a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

      b. This STX supports the COSCOM STX, Position Corps Support Command Units to Support.

      c. This STX can be used to plan and implement movement of the MCB and subordinate elements as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding detachment and MCTs STX should be trained prior to the MCB exercise.

      d. This STX is supported by Detachment HQ and MCTs STX, Relocate Unit to a New Operating Site.

3. Training.

      a. Leader Training.

          (1) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 55-30 and FM 7-20 should be discussed, and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

          (2) Leaders should use a map of the actual area where the STX is to be conducted, and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible. MAPEX assist in terrain analysis, route selection, and selection of bases.

          (3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact STX area is used.

          (4) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

          (5) Situational awareness should be maintained throughout the relocation process using the appropriate communication.

(6) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing movement.

(b) The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where movement and establishment will be performed.

(d) The leader tasks, which must be trained or executed by the senior trainer (MCB commander or XO) with this STX, are analyze MCB mission, provide planning guidance, establish priorities for relocation, approve movement order/annex, supervise activities of staff sections, and supervise movement.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the MCB demonstrates proficiency in the tasks listed in Table 4-11, page 4-28, the STX can be trained under several options:

(a) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(b) With or without NBC environment.

(c) In field or MOUT environment.

(d) Elements moving over a single or multiple routes.

(e) Movement by road or cross-country.

(2) The staff must become proficient in the doctrine and basics of planning for establishing and maintaining situational awareness during movement, and in doctrine and planning convoy movement of subordinate elements before attempting complex actions.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

(4) When using an OPFOR, the OPFOR evaluator/controller must exercise close control over the actions of the OPFOR. The trainer must set out specific OPFOR tasks with an overall objective of placing maximum stress on the MCB. OPFOR will not be employed unless this STX is used as part of FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB commander completes the mission analysis and issues guidance based on the COSCOM guidance, type of operations, or his judgment. The enemy situation will affect the force protection requirements.

b. The staff sections plan the move and prepare the movement order/annex. The MCB S2/3 section leads this task with input from other staff leaders.

c. Staff recommendations are provided in hard copy to the MCB S2/3.

d. All reports should be submitted in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. The MCB should be able to relocate as situation dictates.

f. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used in the AAR.

(1) Did the movement plan conform to the commander's guidance? Did the staff properly react to all deviations from the movement order?

(2) Did the subordinate elements implement the movement plan properly? Did OPFOR cause the desired reaction or enhance training?

g. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are subordinate element weaknesses. If the plan is satisfactory but the MCB execution is poor, then more frequent moves during FTX or detachment/teams STXs are required.

h. This exercise begins with the warning order (assignment of geographic area of responsibility) and ends when subordinate elements have crossed the RP. AARs are conducted after preparation of the movement annex and after the last element crosses the RP. Table 4-12, page 4-28, is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-11. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-3

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-14
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-101
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Formulate Feasible Courses of Action	63-1-4003	5-143
Develop Road Movement Order	63-1-4010	5-173
Develop Occupation Plan	63-1-4011	5-180
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206

Table 4-12. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-3 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Relocation	
19	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	2 hr
20	Coordinate Onward Movement	1 hr
21	Issue FRAGO	10 min
22	Road March	1 hr
23	Cross SP	10 min
24	Threat Interdictions	40 min
25	Continue Road March	1 hr
26	Cross RP	10 min
27	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	7 hr, 10 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.

5. General Situation.

a. The MCB has arrived at new theater of operations. The MCB has received their baggage and equipment. The MCB is now waiting for further guidance on relocating. After receiving guidance from the COSCOM, the MCB must be prepared to relocate as part of a higher element to a new area of operations.

b. Pertinent maps and engineer overlays are available.

c. Route reconnaissance will be performed by staff leaders.

d. The OPFOR is capable of launching air or ground attacks, employing NBC agents, and engaging in EW.

e. Major deviation(s) from the displacement plan occur.

f. This exercise is conducted in all day and night environmental conditions.

6. FRAGO. The commander is conducting a meeting with his staff and key leaders. The following guidance is given:

"The MCB will relocate as part of a higher element to the vicinity of _____, grid coordinates. The MCB must cross the SP NLT_____. The S2/3 and key leaders will conduct route reconnaissance, select routes, organize detachment HQ and MCTs for move, and prepare movement annex/order to be published NLT _____ hours. We must maintain communications with convoy elements. The enemy has the capability to interdict convoy movements along the entire MSR. Maintain march discipline and proper distance between convoys and serials. The uniform for all subordinate elements is MOPP2. Intelligence reports have been received that a contaminated area has been detected on current route of march in the vicinity of _____. Higher HQ alerts elements to reroute at checkpoint _____ to alternate MSR and have them report upon closure at the new location."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) MILES can be used or the OC can assess damage to the MCB.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When an OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size is needed to support the number of vehicles and equipment. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 20 kilometers. Vegetation and terrain should allow cover and concealment for facilities, vehicles, and equipment.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-13 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-13. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-3

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per section/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment

EQUIPMENT

All equipment organic to each MCB to include TOE and CTA authorized.

FUEL	QUANTITY

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT

AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per section
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each
CS Grenades	4/per OPFOR

OTHER

Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all of the items in this table.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-4

SUPERVISE ESTABLISHMENT

1. Objective. This STX is designed to trains the MCB commander, staff, and other key members with practice in planning, coordinating, and supervising the establishment of the MCB area of operations. The staff must become proficient in planning occupation of the new area; coordinating advance/quartering party activities; supervising the subordinate elements, bases, and facilities; establishing and maintaining communications with subordinate elements and force protection. This STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and supervising the functions necessary to occupy, develop, and defend the area.

2. Interface.

       a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

       b. This STX supports the COSCOM STX, Establish COSCOM Command and Control and Staff Activities.

       c. This STX can be used to plan and implement the establishment of the MCB as part of a CPX or FTX. If this STX is used with all or some subordinate elements, the corresponding detachment HQ and MCTs STX should be trained prior to the battalion exercise.

       d. This STX supports the Detachment HQ and MCTs STX, Establish Unit Area of Operations.

3. Training.

       a. Leader Training.

           (1) This STX can be used to implement the establishment of the MCB as part of a CPX or an FTX.

           (2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and responsibilities and procedures in FM 3-3, FM 7-8, FM 3-19.4, FM 44-8, and FM 55-30 should be discussed; and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

           (3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the STX exact area is used.

           (4) Games and simulations are developed to teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program. They also are used to exercise command and control at various command and staff levels.

(5) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing the establishment of the MCB area.

(b) The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where the MCB will be established.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the MCB demonstrates proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-14, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) In a field or MOUT environment.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) Day or night.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(2) The staff must become proficient in doctrine and basics of planning and supervising the establishment of battalion area of operations and implementing force protection activities before attempting complex operations.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB commander provides planning guidance based upon the Corps commander's guidance or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the degree of the permanency that will be accomplished. The enemy situation will affect force protection requirements. The MCB must be prepared at all times to defend against air, ground, or terrorist attacks during day or night, and respond appropriately to enemy or friendly NBC operations.

b. The staff sections develop base facilities layout plans and force protection and supervise their implementation. The MCB S2/3 is the proponent for these supporting missions with the input from the staff sections. The detachment HQ establishes the new operating site IAW the MCB and COSCOM operational plans. When the site is operational, the COSCOM is notified that the MCB is prepared to perform its operational mission.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. In considering the proficiency of the staff, the following sequential guidance can be used:

(1) Did the occupation plan conform to the commander's guidance?

(2) Did the detachment HQ and MCTs implement the occupation plan properly?

e. Deficiencies identified in (1) above should be traced to staff weaknesses. Those identified in (2) above are the subordinate's elements weakness. If the plan is satisfactory, but the subordinate elements execution is poor, then more frequent establishment during FTX or detachment and MCTs level STX are required.

f. This exercise begins when the MCB arrives in the new area and ends when the area is established. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-15, page 4-34. Table 4-15 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-14. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-4

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-17
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)	63-1-4020	5-20
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-101
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations	63-1-4012	5-184
Establish Communications	63-1-4017	5-192
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-209

Table 4-15. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-4 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Establishment	
28	Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	2 hr
29	Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion HQ	1 hr, 30 min
30	Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center	1 hr, 30 min
31	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	6 hr

NOTE: Events are trained to standards, not time limitations. The time requested to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and MCB proficiency.

5. General Situation.

     a. The MCB has relocated to its new area of operations. The MCB must plan the establishment of new area of operations.

     b. Pertinent maps and overlays are available.

     c. The new AO may be in a field or MOUT environment.

     d. The staff sections have formulated a tentative layout and defensive plan prior to reconnaissance of the new site.

     e. The OPFOR is capable of launching air and ground attacks and engaging in NBC warfare and EW.

     f. This exercise is conducted in all environmental conditions.

6. Special Situation. The MCB commander is conducting a meeting with his staff and key leaders. The following guidance is given:

     "The battalion will be located in COSCOM, Begin establishing MCB area of operations. From this location we will provide a central HQ for all movement control teams assigned or attached. I want the MCB area of operations set up and operational immediately, followed by administrative and bivouac areas. Get communications set up and maintain communications with higher HQ and MCTs. The enemy is capable of mounting aerial and ground attacks and is also capable of bringing direct and indirect fire upon us. Have all subordinate elements use cover and concealment to mask our activities and strictly enforce light and noise discipline. Have them place LPs and OPs far enough out to give adequate warning. Uniform remains MOPP2 for all assigned and attached personnel based on reports of enemy treat capabilities."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR may or may not be required when the exercise is conducted as part of a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to the MCB.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are needed for the OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size is required to support the vehicles and equipment.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-16 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-16. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-4

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56 mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/per section/OPFOR
Arty Simulator	4/per OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
Blank Adapters	1 per wpn

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment including TOE and CTA items authorized.

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

Table 4-16. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-4 (continued)

NBC EQUIPMENT   QUANTITY

AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)   1 per section
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant   1 each
CS Grenades   4/per OPFOR

OTHER

Field rations   As required
War Wound Moulage Set   1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-5

PROVIDE MOVEMENT CONTROL SUPPORT

1. Objective. This STX trains the MCB commander, staff, and other key members in planning, coordinating, and managing movement programs, highway regulation, and transportation support for the Corps. The staff must become proficient in supervising attached and assigned MCTs in movement control and highway regulation.

2. Interface.

a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

b. This STX supports the following COSCOM STXs:

(1) Manage Tactical-Level CSS and Limited CHS.

(2) Manage Corps Material Distribution Systems.

(3) Manage Sustainment of COSCOM Internal Support Structure.

c. This STX is supported by the following STXs:

(1) Detachment Headquarters STX, Provide Headquarters Life Support.

(2) Movement Control Teams STX, Direct Transportation Support.

3. Training.

a. Leader Training.

(1) This STX can be used to plan and conduct movement control support as part of a CPX or an FTX.

(2) During classroom activities, MCB responsibilities and procedures outlined in FM 55-1 should be discussed and reviewed. The trainer should review the TSOP and T&EOs listed in this STX.

(3) CPX and MAPEX provide the staff the training to teach team work and proper preparation of estimates and orders.

(4) CFX or TEWT using the MCB staff and a limited number of vehicles from subordinate elements provide training for MCB leaders. Leaders from subordinate elements train their related STX as part of the officer and NCO development program.

(5) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for coordinating transportation support requirements.

(b) The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted, if possible, of the training area where this STX will be performed.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the MCB demonstrates proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-17, this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) In a field or MOUT environment.

(b) With or without NBC conditions.

(c) Day or night.

(d) With or without OPFOR interdictions.

(2) The trainer must become proficient in the doctrine and the basics of transportation support before attempting complex operations.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB commander provides planning guidance based upon the Corps commander's concept of operations or based upon his own judgment. The type of operations determines the scheme and priorities of support.

b. Coordination of support operations is found in appropriate publications.

c. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations are provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

d. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends when the MCB receives notification of a Level II/III threat. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-18. Table 4-18 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-17. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-5

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-37
Supervise Operations Security Program	63-1-4038	5-101
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Process Road Clearance Requests	55-1-0040	5-122
Develop Movement Program	55-1-0041	5-124
Develop a Highway Regulation Plan	55-1-0047	5-126
Establish Movement Control Operations	55-1-0049	5-128
Provide Command and Control of Movement Control Battalion	55-1-0051	5-131
Receive the Mission	63-1-4000	5-134
Conduct Mission Analysis	63-1-4001.55-0001	5-136
Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center	63-1-4037	5-196
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206

Table 4-18. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-5 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Provide Movement Control Support	
32	Conduct Mission Analysis	1 hr
33	Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation	8 hr
34	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	10 hr

NOTE: Events are trained to standards, not time limitations. The time requested to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.

5. General Situation.

a. The MCB has established their assigned area of responsibilities. The MCB mission is to provide command, control, and supervision of attached and assigned MCTs to provide movement control support for the Corps.

b. The COSCOM and MCB OPLAN/OPORD are available.

c. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from the COSCOM to the MCB. The MCB implements OPSEC measures.

d. Sufficient MCB supplies and equipment are available.

e. Exercise is conducted on a field site or MOUT environment.

f. The OPFOR may be conventional or unconventional forces and is capable of intelligence gathering. The OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. Local security is maintained by using OPSEC countermeasure techniques.

g. The OPFOR can launch air, ground, and/or NBC attacks. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred. OPFOR is capable of conducting EW.

h. The exercise is conducted under all day and night environmental conditions.

6. Special Situation. The MCB commander issues the following:

"We will be operating in the Corps rear area. We will plan coordinate, and manage movement programming, and highway regulation, and transportation support for the Corps. We will also provide asset visibility and maintain intransit visibility of tactical and nontactical moves. The S2/3 will run the operations center. I want to be updated on the status of support as soon as you encounter problems or there is a break in operations."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the senior internal evaluator. If the STX is conducted for the MCB headquarters staff, then one evaluator per staff section is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR is not required when the exercise is a CPX. The OPFOR should be used if the exercise is part of an FTX.

(2) The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(3) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to MCB personnel.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When the OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio are required for each OC.

d. Maneuver Area. A training area of sufficient size, approximately 250 by 250 meters, is needed to support the number of vehicles and equipment in the MCB.

e. Master Incident List. During the STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-19 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-19. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-5

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	120 rds/per wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	4/OPFOR/MCB
Arty Simulator	4/OPFOR
MILES	1 set per soldier/equipment
Blank Adapter	1 per wpn
CS Grenades	4/OPFOR

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized items.

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per MCB
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	2 each

OTHER

Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attack	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all of the items in this table.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-6

SUPERVISE FORCE PROTECTION

1. Objective. This STX trains the MCB commander, staff, and key leaders in planning, coordinating, and command and control of force protection activities of the MCB area. The staff must become proficient in planning force protection activities, establishing and coordinating area defense, operating the base operations center, and directing responses to the area's threat. The STX combines the elements of planning, coordinating, and directing procedures necessary to accomplish force protection activities.

2. Interface.

     a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

     b. This STX supports the COSCOM STX, Direct COSCOM Force Protection Activities.

3. Training.

     a. Leader Training.

        (1) This STX can be used to plan and conduct MCB defensive operations as part of a CPX or FTX.

        (2) Classroom activities will cover the MCB TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in the T&EOs in this STX. The trainer should emphasize the following items:

            (a) Implementation of defensive plan.

            (b) Proper use of weapons.

            (c) Maneuver and fires.

            (d) Indirect fire and CAS calling procedures.

            (e) Withdrawal.

            (f) NBC defense procedures.

            (g) Hasty displacement procedures.

            (h) ADC procedures.

        (3) CPX, CFX, and TEWT provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STX is used.

(4) Tips for leader training.

(a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing MCB defense.

(b) The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs should be reviewed.

(c) A personal reconnaissance should be conducted of the training area, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the MCB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-20, page 4-44, this STX can be trained under the following options:

(a) With or without NBC conditions.

(b) Day or night.

(c) In a field or MOUT environment.

(2) The MCB must be proficient in the basics of planning and conducting MCB defense before attempting complex operations.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB must be prepared at any time to assist in the defense against air, ground, or threat attacks during daylight or darkness and is prepared to respond appropriately to enemy or friendly chemical or nuclear operations.

b. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

c. This exercise begins when the MCB receives notification of a Level II or III threat in the MCB area and ends after the MCB completes ADC operations. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-21, page 4-44. Table 4-21 is a suggested scenario.

Table 4-20. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-6

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations	63-1-4040	5-104
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Plan Rear Operations	63-1-4014	5-187
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-209
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-212
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-216

Table 4-21. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-6 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Force Protection	
35	Receive Threat Interdictions	30 min
36	AAR	1 hr
37	Level II/III Attacks	30 min
38	Defense Responses	30 min
39	Damage Assessment	1 hr
40	Restoration of Support	1 hr
41	AAR	1 hr
	Total Time:	5 hr, 30 min

NOTE: Events are trained to standards, not time limitations. The time requested to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB. The estimated times are for planning purposes only.

5. General Situation.

a. The MCB has established its defensive positions as part of a base cluster and has received notification of a Level II/III attack. The OPFOR has infiltrated or airdropped a platoon size or larger force in the area to seek out command and control and support facilities to disrupt friendly battle sustainment.

b. The COSCOM and MCB TSOPs and OPORD with rear operations annex are available.

c. The MCB defenses have been established.

d. Rear operations communications system has been established.

e. This exercise is conducted under all day and night environmental conditions.

f. The OPFOR has the potential to conduct ground, air, and NBC warfare.

6. FRAGO. The MCB commander issues the following FRAGO: "A Level II/III attack is imminent. Cease operations and implement MCB defensive plan. Prepare for threat engagement within 30 minutes. Further information will be disseminated as the exercise develops."

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers/OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of three OCs is required.

b. Opposing Force.

(1) The OPFOR should not be more than squad (+) size with two crew-served weapons. The OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled when used.

(2) MILES can be used, or the OC can assess damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used. When OPFOR is employed, a vehicle and radio for the OC are needed.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending upon the LTA, it is desirable to have an adequate training area, which is approximately 250 by 250 meters.

e. Master Incident List. During this STX, MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-22, page 4-46, shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-22. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-6

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56mm (Blank)	120 rds/wpn
7.62mm (Blank)	250 rds/wpn
Smoke Grenades	8 OPFOR/4 section
ARTY Simulator	4 OPFOR
CS Grenade	4 OPFOR
Blank Adapter	1 per/wpn
MILES	1 per soldier/equipment

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized.

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per section
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	2 each

OTHER

Field Rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined above are intended as suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all items in this table.

TRANSPORTATION MOVEMENT CONTROL BATTALION

STX C-7

SUPERVISE REDEPLOYMENT

1. Objective. This STX trains the MCB commander, staff, and key leaders in supervising the redeploying of the MCB from a theater of operations to home station or mobilization site. The MCB commander, staff, and key leaders must become proficient in planning and preparing the MCB for redeployment operations.

2. Interface.

     a. This STX supports the MCB FTX, Provide Movement Management and Highway Regulation.

     b. This STX supports the COSCOM STX, Direct COSCOM Redeployment Operations.

3. Training.

     a. Leader Training.

        (1) This STX can be used to plan and implement redeployment (land, sea, or air) of the MCB as a part of an FTX.

        (2) During classroom activities, the use of the TSOP and the responsibilities and procedures outlined in FMs 55-9, 55-10, 55-65, 90-26, and 100-17. ARs 220-10, 700-84, and 750-1 should be discussed and the T&EOs listed in this STX should be reviewed.

        (3) The leader should use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted and a sand table model to match the actual terrain, if possible.

        (4) CPX, CFX, and TEWTs provide ground training for leaders when the exact area of the STXs is used.

        (5) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and NCO development program.

        (6) Tips for leader training.

            (a) Leaders should familiarize themselves with the procedures for planning and executing redeployment operations.

            (b) Leaders should review the higher echelon and MCB SOPs.

            (c) Leaders should conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area where redeployment activities will take place, if possible.

b. Tips for Training.

(1) After the MCB has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks in Table 4-23 this STX can be trained under several options:

(a) Inclement weather.

(b) Multiple increments.

(c) Different mode of transportation.

(d) Day or night.

(2) The MCB must become proficient in the basics of planning and executing basic redeployment before attempting complex options.

(3) After proficiency in this STX is reached, the MCB sustains proficiency by executing this STX as part of an FTX.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. The MCB commander, in coordination with higher HQ, secures required redeployment SOPs.

b. UMO/NCO updates MCB redeployment plans in coordination with higher echelon staff.

c. Higher HQ provides MCB with the redeployment sequence.

d. Unless otherwise approved by the chief OC, all reports and recommendations should be provided in hard copy to the senior trainer for evaluation.

e. This exercise begins with receipt of a warning order and ends upon completion of redeployment activities. AARs are conducted as shown in Table 4-24. Table 4-24 is a suggested scenario.

5. General Situation.

a. The MCB is employed in a theater of operations and is to be redeployed to CONUS. The MCB is under the command and control of a higher echelon element.

b. MCB commanders must provide personnel and equipment status reports.

c. The base support elements provide required redeployment support.

d. This exercise is conducted in all day and night environmental conditions.

Table 4-23. T&EOs From Chapter 5 to Use in Evaluating STX C-7

TASK	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-32
Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment	63-1-4865	5-73
Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4866	5-76
Provide Redeployment Support	63-1-4867	5-79
Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	63-1-4868	5-84
Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	63-1-4869	5-87
Coordinate Home Station Activities	63-1-4870	5-90
Conduct Command Religious Support Program	63-1-4044	5-111
Combat Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures	63-1-4303	5-115
Perform Risk Management Procedures	63-1-4326	5-119
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-223

Table 4-24. Sample Movement Control Battalion STX C-7 Scenario

Sequence	Event	Estimated Time
	Supervise Redeployment	
42	Receive Warning Order for Redeployment	15 min
43	Coordinate Reconstitution of the MCB for Deployment	1 hr
44	Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order	1 hr
45	Supervise Battalion Redeployment Activities	1 hr
46	Provide Redeployment Support	1 hr
47	Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities	1 hr
48	Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities	1 hr
49	Coordinate Home Station Activities	1 hr, 30 min
50	Final AAR	2 hr
	Total Time:	9 hr, 45 min

NOTE: Events will be trained to standard, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-T factors and the training proficiency of the MCB.

6. FRAGO. The MCB commander issues the following FRAGO: "Alternative route A will be used for moving to TAA/RAA located at _____ (grid coordinates). Prepare to move within _____ hours."

7. Support Requirements.

      a. Minimum Trainer and OCs. This exercise should be conducted with the MCB commander or XO as the trainer and primary OC. A minimum of two OCs is required.

      b. Opposing Force. None.

      c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the MCB are used.

      d. Maneuver Area. A road network is required that allows a road march of at least 25 kilometers.

      e. Master Incident List. During this STX, the MIL is essential to provide input to drive MCB actions.

      f. Consolidated Support Requirements. Table 4-25 shows the suggested support requirements for this STX.

Table 4-25. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements for STX C-7

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
NONE	
EQUIPMENT	
All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA authorized. Rail and aircraft load simulations.	
FUEL	
Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.	
NBC EQUIPMENT	NONE
RATIONS	

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this STX are intended as suggestions. Local policies or constraints may not allow for providing the items.

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. GENERAL. This chapter contains the tasks, conditions, and standards for all collective tasks this unit must master to perform its missions.

5-2. STRUCTURE. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1, pages 5-2 through 5-5. The Mission to Collective Tasks matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. FORMAT. The T&EO is the training objective prepared for each collective task. Each T&EO contains the following components:

a. Element--identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

b. Task--contains a start and stop point, is measurable, and supports a specific mission.

c. Task Number--identifies the task throughout the MTP.

d. References--are in parentheses following the task number. The reference, which contains the most information about the task, is underlined.

e. Iteration--identifies the number of times a task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP 4.

f. Training Status--evaluates the unit's performance. The rating is circled each time the task is evaluated. The two ratings are:

(1) GO - the unit successfully accomplished the task standard and the task step performance measures with no significant shortcomings.

(2) NO GO - the unit did not accomplish the task standard and task step performance measures.

g. Conditions--describes the environment and situation under which the task is to be performed and contains the initiating cue for the task.

h. Task Standard--prescribes the overall task outcome, which must be met to receive credit for successful execution of the task.

i. Task Steps--are actions that must take place for task performance. They are sequentially arranged when it is important for proper execution of the task.

j. Performance Measures--are detailed measures listed for each task step. They identify how well the task step must be performed or the desired outcome.

k. The GO/NO GO column is used to record the performance of the performance measure. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

5-4. OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS. These tasks and standards provide overall OPFOR performance standards for selected collective tasks. These tasks and standards also ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using doctrine and tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-5. USAGE OF T&EO. The T&EO can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks, such as an FTX or STX.

Table 5-1. List of Movement Control Battalion T&EOs

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE		
Provide Intelligence Support	63-1-4051	5-6
DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER		
Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities	63-1-4015	5-9
Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements	63-1-4018	5-14
Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters	63-1-4019	5-17
Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)	63-1-4020	5-20
Direct Deployment Alert Activities	63-1-4850	5-23
Establish the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4851	5-26
Operate the Emergency Operations Center	63-1-4852	5-29
Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities	63-1-4853	5-32
Update Movement Plan/Order	63-1-4854	5-37
Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support	63-1-4855	5-40
Provide Deployment Human Resources Support	63-1-4856	5-43
Coordinate Family Assistance Support	63-1-4857	5-47
Coordinate Deployment Training Support	63-1-4858	5-50
Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions	63-1-4859	5-52

Table 5-1. List of Movement Control Battalion T&EOs (continued)

Table 5-1. List of Movement Control Battalion T&EOs (continued)

Table 5-1. List of Movement Control Battalion T&EOs (continued)

BOS AND TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Maintain Communications	63-1-4041	5-200
Provide Command and Control	63-1-4045	5-206
Operate Base Cluster Operations Center	63-1-4050	5-209
Direct Response to Threat Actions	63-1-4052	5-212
Direct Area Damage Control Operations	63-1-4053	5-216
Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order	63-1-4873	5-219
Plan Battalion Redeployment	63-1-4874	5-223

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Provide Intelligence Support (63-1-4051) (<u>FM 34-1</u>, AR 530-1, FM 3-3, FM 3-4,
                    FM 34-130, FM 34-54)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Intelligence information on the tactical situation is disseminated from the higher HQ S2/3 Section and the supporting rear operations element. The commander, staff, and subordinate units require intelligence information for current operations and planning. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to appropriate agencies and elements IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors decrease the processing and dissemination of intelligence information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section identifies information requirements using analog and/or digital devices.		
a. Identifies current intelligence information requirements.		
b. Lists priority intelligence requirements.		
c. Lists current intelligence holdings shortcomings.		
2. S2/3 Section assembles required intelligence information.		
a. Prepares information collection plan.		
b. Submits request for additional support to higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.		
c. Revises collection plan to reflect current needs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
3. S2/3 Section disseminates intelligence.		
a. Verifies reports for relevancy, reliability, and accuracy.		
b. Records intelligence information in journal.		
c. Identifies significant effects of weather.		
d. Records pertinent weather data.		
e. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications.		
f. Annotates analog/digital situation map with current friendly and enemy locations.		
g. Prepares INTSUM.		
h. Disseminates INTSUM to appropriate agencies and elements using analog and digital communications.		
4. S2/3 Section maintains classified information.		
a. Stores classified information IAW current OPSEC instructions, TSOP, and AR 190-13.		
b. Marks all classified information IAW TSOP and AR 190-13.		
c. Controls access to classified information.		
d. Enforces information security measures.		
e. Provides classified maps.		
f. Maintains emergency destruction instructions IAW AR 190-13 and TSOP.		
5. S2/3 Section plans EPW handling.		
a. Coordinates handling and locations of holding areas with supporting MP element and higher HQ S2/3 Section.		
b. Monitors EPW handling operations to ensure compliance with the TSOP, OPORD, and the provisions of the Geneva Convention.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section
Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Perform Battalion Advance/Quartering Party Activities (63-1-4015) (<u>FM 101-5,</u>
AR 530-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-3, FM 3-4)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: Departure time for the advance/quartering parties has arrived. The advance/quartering parties are prepared to depart the assembly area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is provided all essential information, to include the route, order of march, and ETA for the main body. The battalion advance/quartering party leader is issued tentative battalion area and CP layout, traffic circulation, and communications plans. The battalion advance/quartering party consists of an OIC; security, staff, and communications elements; and representatives from subordinate units. Sufficient guides, markers, and other equipment are available. Battalion advance/quartering party deploys in MOPP2. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack.

NOTE: If survey team(s) monitor high levels of contamination, the area should be evacuated immediately. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance/quartering party's movement is conducted IAW movement order. All new area preparation tasks as directed by the S2/3 are accomplished IAW TSOP and the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section organizes battalion advance/quartering party.		
a. Provides required size of parties to subordinate units.		
b. Briefs party leaders IAW the TSOP.		
c. Dispatches party as prescribed in the movement order.		
2. Battalion advance/quartering party moves to new operating site.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications and MTS.		
b. Crosses SP, CPs, and the RP as prescribed in the movement order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Follows route prescribed in the movement order.		
d. Reports route changes, intelligence, and any other information to the main body by route guides, route markers, MTS, or analog and/or digital communications.		
e. Moves battalion advance/quartering party into a concealed, predesignated assembly area to await clearance of new area.		
*3. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises securing the new battalion area.		
a. Dispatches security element to sweep the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence.		
b. Dispatches NBC survey and monitoring teams personnel to sweep assigned sectors.		
c. Places OP on probable avenues of approach consistent with personnel assets.		
d. Conducts area reconnaissance (mounted or dismounted) with subordinate elements' leaders pointing out general locations of each element.		
e. Moves entire party into the new area.		
f. Forwards closing report to main body, if possible, using MTS or analog and digital communications.		
4. Battalion advance/quartering party secures the new battalion area.		
a. Dons protective mask before entering new area.		
b. Sweeps the area to locate mines, booby traps, or other signs of threat presence (security elements).		
c. Surveys assigned areas for NBC contamination (Survey and Monitor Teams).		
d. Occupies OP on probable avenues of approach.		
e. Moves into new area as directed by the party leader.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*5. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises area preparation.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or analog and digital communications.		
b. Monitors movement of each subordinate unit's advance/quartering party into their respective areas to ensure compliance with layout plan and traffic circulation plans.		
c. Supervises implementation of hasty security plan to ensure that each element secures its individual area.		
d. Supervises implementation of communications plan in coordination with the communications representatives to ensure some type of communications exists between the CP and all subordinate units.		
e. Enforces OPSEC measures during preparation of subordinate units' areas.		
f. Tasks unit representatives to block all other possible entrance and exit points with available materials.		
6. Battalion advance/quartering party implements tentative battalion layout and circulation plan.		
a. Marks battalion traffic pattern IAW layout plan.		
b. Establishes entrance/exit points to all subordinate units' locations.		
c. Constructs obstructions to block all other possible entrance and exit points.		
d. Forwards plan to battalion HQ using analog and digital communications.		
7. Battalion advance/quartering party implements hasty security plan.		
a. Prepares battalion hasty defensive sketch.		
b. Enforces camouflage and concealment measures.		
c. Identifies locations for emplacement of emergency alarm devices.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

8. Battalion advance/quartering party implements analog and/or digital communications plan.
 	
        a. Establishes analog and digital communications and local area networks between CP and subordinate and adjacent units.
 	
        b. Establishes analog and digital communications and local area networks between CP and higher HQ.
 	
        c. Employs signal security measures.
 	
*9. Battalion advance/quartering party leader supervises reception of main body.
 	
        a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications.
 	
        b. Identifies guide pickup points.
 	
        c. Briefs ground guides on moving main body into their respective areas with emphasis on OPSEC measures.
 	
        d. Directs dispatching of unit guides to the RP.
 	
        e. Monitors subordinate units' guide activities to ensure compliance with party leaders guidance and TSOP.
 	
        f. Enforces countersurveillance measures.
 	
        g. Provides progress report to the S2/3 and commander upon arrival of main body using analog and/or digital communications, courier, or MTS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-1014	Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-2001	Use M256 or M256A1 Chemical Agent Detector Kit	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
052-192-1135	Locate Mines by Probing	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-1-SMCT
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ARTEP 55-406-MTP

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Movement of Subordinate Elements (63-1-4018) (<u>FM 55-1</u>, FM 101-5,
FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-3, FM 55-10, FM 55-30)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: All subordinate unit relocation plans are available. The S2/S3 Section is required to monitor road marches until all closing reports are received. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays with SP, checkpoints, RP, critical points and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. First battalion element crosses its SP. Deviations from movement order occur. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All subordinate units are relocated to new areas as prescribed in movement order. Each subordinate unit and battalion HQ makes a closing report as prescribed in the TSOP. Rear party departs when main body has established the new area. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase staff reaction and coordination of movement deviations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Staff Sections coordinate support with HQ/Supply company for the move.
 	
        a. Coordinate additional CHS requirements with medical element that has area responsibility.
 	
        b. Coordinate additional recovery requirements with maintenance element that has area responsibility.
 	
        c. Coordinate engineer and MP support requirements with elements that have area responsibility.
 	
        d. Coordinate convoy clearance request with movement control element that has area responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Brief HQ/Supply company march commander on tactical situation, communications frequencies and procedures, and emergency action procedures.		
f. Coordinate constant communications from the SP until the RP.		
2. S2/S3 Section monitors movement of subordinate companies and battalion HQ.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS, or analog and/or digital communications.		
b. Maintains communications with each subordinate unit and battalion HQ elements IAW movement order and TSOP.		
c. Maintains situation map(s) and overlays displaying subordinate units and battalion HQ elements' movement progress.		
d. Provides corrective actions to subordinate units and battalion HQ elements when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, route adjustments) using MTS, or analog and/or digital communications.		
e. Provides coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency.		
f. Coordinates en route subordinate units' support requirements with area support units until all known requirements are fulfilled.		
g. Records closing reports from subordinate units and battalion HQ elements upon receipt.		
h. Provides final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and higher HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.		
3. S2/S3 Section directs external support operations during move.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS/STAMIS, analog and/or digital communications.		
b. Coordinates requirements with the supported unit(s) and supporting material management element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Coordinates pickup or delivery of sustainment resources between subordinate units and requesting units. d. Communicates emergency requirements to the main body battalion staff. e. Provides closure report to CP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
113-573-8006	Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Supervise Establishment of Subordinate Elements and Battalion Headquarters
(63-1-4019) (<u>FM 10-27-3</u>, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 34-130)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Subordinate units are moving along designated route(s) to new area(s). The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion advance/quartering party is dispatched to the new CP area. Subordinate units are required to submit closing reports. The advance/quartering party has established the advance CP. The battalion advance/quartering party leader briefs the commander on the status of new area preparation. The S2/3 issued occupation plans to the CP and subordinate units. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Subordinate units, support facilities, and the CP are established IAW layout plan, OPORD, and TSOP. All new CP preparation tasks are accomplished as directed by the S2/3 IAW TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish a CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section monitors movement of advance/quartering parties.
 	
        a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
        b. Maintains constant radio communications IAW movement order and TSOP.
 	
        c. Coordinates support or emergency action requirements with appropriate element based on assistance required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. Battalion HQ performs CP functions. 　　　a. Supervises establishment of battalion area IAW layout plan and TSOP. 　　　b. Establishes battalion messenger system until local area networks and analog and/or digital communications have been established. 　　　c. Coordinates logistics and CHS operations from forward location (limited operations). 　　　d. Supervises the establishment of local area networks and analog and/or digital communications within the CP area. 　　　e. Sets up battalion analog/digital situation map(s). 3. S2/3 Section monitors deployment of subordinate units and battalion HQ. 　　　a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. 　　　b. Supervises deployment of units as prescribed by the layout plan. 　　　c. Coordinates impact of unit position changes with other staff sections. 　　　d. Approves unit position changes of subordinate elements that are caused by terrain and/or tactical considerations. 　　　e. Posts analog/digital situation map(s) and overlay(s) to reflect new unit positions. 　　　f. Provides deployment update to commander and XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1019	Use a Map Overlay	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Establish Administrative Areas and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC) (63-1-4020)
(FM 63-21, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 63-20)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The main body of the battalion HQ has arrived at the new location. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/3 has selected the general location of the LOC and administrative areas. Advance CP personnel have identified specific locations and initial preparations are completed. All required personnel and equipment are available. The CP (Forward) maintains operational control of the battalion until the new LOC is established. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: LOC is capable of communicating with and controlling support assets and survival measure assets within the time specified in the TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increases time required to establish logistics center and administrative areas.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section establishes ALOC.
 	
    a. Identifies staff working areas that facilitates immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.
 	
    b. Sets up internal arrangement IAW XO, S2/3, and Support Operations Officers guidance.
 	
    c. Sets up analog/digital maps, map overlays, and informational displays that show the current tactical situations of all friendly and enemy forces affecting the battalion's mission IAW TSOP.
 	
    d. Sets up analog/digital status boards.
 	
NOTE: Status boards display locations of support facilities and their capabilities and status of personnel and equipment.
 	
    e. Establishes commander's briefing area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

f. Prepares sleep plan that is consistent with phases of supported unit's operations.
 	
      g. Establishes policy file, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
 	
      h. Sets up area access and security IAW the TSOP.
 	
2. S1 and S4 Sections establish administrative areas.
 	
      a. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate staff access to all required information.
 	
      b. Set up maps and status boards displaying status of internal logistics, personnel, and equipment.
 	
      c. Establish communications nets in the order of priority specified by the S6/S2/3.
 	
      d. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.
 	
      e. Coordinate generator electrical power with the S6/S2/3.
 	
3. Commo Section establishes analog and digital communications.
 	
NOTE: The S2/3 Section must perform this task step if unit does not have an S6 Section.
 	
      a. Establishes all communications nets in order of priority specified in the TSOP and OPORD.
 	
      b. Establishes area for processing incoming and outgoing messages.
 	
      c. Installs local area network.
 	
      d. Operates local area network.
 	
      e. Issues passwords.
 	
      f. Installs antivirus software.
 	
      g. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                  S1 Section
                  S2/3 Section
                  Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
                  Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Direct Deployment Alert Activities (63-1-4850) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 55-65)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT			T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a warning order to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The movement plan/order, recall plan, security plan, and TSOP are available. The battalion's subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The battalion communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion personnel are recalled IAW the Recall Plan. Personnel are designated to staff emergency operations center IAW RSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S2/3 Section/Staff Duty Officer executes alert notification procedures.		
a. Authenticates deployment warning order IAW TSOP.		
b. Notifies commander and S2/3 that battalion has received a deployment warning order.		
c. Initiates recall procedures IAW commander's guidance and Recall Plan.		
*2. Commander and S2/3 supervise alert and recall activities.		
a. Direct implementation of Recall Plan, as required.		
b. Direct establishment of the EOC.		
c. Task staff sections to provide personnel for the EOC IAW TSOP and commander's guidance.		
d. Monitor recall progress for compliance with TSOP.		
e. Designate location of EOC.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

3. S2/3 Section monitors progress of recall.
 	
    a. Identifies time-phased present-for-duty requirements by reviewing recall plan.
 	
    b. Identifies present-for-duty status by reviewing recall status reports from subordinate units.
 	
    c. Calculates recall percentages IAW recall plan.
 	
    d. Monitors establishment of physical security of battalion HQ and subordinate unit areas by inspection and/or review of recall status reports.
 	
    e. Briefs commander and S2/3 on progress of recall.
 	
4. Staff sections perform alert functions.
 	
    a. Designate personnel to staff EOC IAW TSOP.
 	
    b. Brief staff officer/section chiefs on status of recall, as required.
 	
5. S2/3 Section performs deployment alert activities.
 	
    a. Coordinates with higher HQ staff element for guidance concerning deployment requirements.
 	
    b. Issues SOIs, authentication tables, operations codes, frequency, and call signs to subordinate units.
 	
    c. Directs units to initiate OPSEC procedures.
 	
    d. Activates guard mount to control access to restricted areas, as designated.
 	
    e. Sends request to S4 Section for maps, if needed.
 	
    f. Establishes secure communications with higher HQ staff elements and/or installation EOC.
 	
    g. Identifies liaison to higher HQ, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                S1 Section
                S2/3 Section
                S4 Section
                Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
                Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Establish the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4851) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 3-19.30)

       ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has directed that the EOC be established. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Battalion personnel have been recalled. Personnel and equipment required to establish the EOC are available. The location of the EOC has been designated. The RSOP, movement plan/order, and security plan are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The EOC is established IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance and within the time specified by the XO or S2/3.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. XO or S2/3 supervises establishment of the EOC.
 	
    a. Identifies EOC requirements and layout by reviewing the RSOP and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Directs S2/3 Section to set up EOC IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.
 	
    c. Assigns EOC work areas to staff elements.
 	
    d. Directs staff sections to set up EOC work areas IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.
 	
2. S2/3 Section sets up EOC.
 	
    a. Identifies work areas that facilitate immediate access of personnel to all required information.
 	
    b. Sets up internal arrangement of EOC IAW XO or S2/3 guidance.
 	
    c. Establishes communications and/or data processing in order of the priority specified in the movement plan/order and/or RSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Sets up maps, map overlays, informational displays, and status boards.		
e. Establishes areas for processing incoming and outgoing messages.		
f. Establishes commander's work area.		
g. Establishes commander's briefing area.		
h. Prepares EOC manning schedule.		
i. Establishes policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.		
j. Sets up area access and security IAW the RSOP and security plan.		
k. Prepares EOC access roster.		
l. Distributes EOC access roster IAW RSOP and security plan.		
m. Briefs XO or S2/3 upon completion of the EOC setup.		
3. Staff sections set up EOC work areas.		
a. Position equipment IAW RSOP.		
b. Establish policy files, records, staff journals, and section workbooks.		
c. Set up maps and status boards displaying status of deployment operations.		
d. Set up briefing area for daily situation briefings.		
e. Brief XO or S2/3 when EOC is operational.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section
Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Operate the Emergency Operations Center (63-1-4852) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 3-0, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-19.30)

    ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion deployment activities have commenced. Staff journals, workbooks, current maps, overlays, the TSOP, movement plan/order, movement directive, and physical security plan are available. The EOC is required to coordinate the battalion's deployment activities. Wheeled vehicles and equipment move to the APOE and SPOE by convoy or rail. The EOC communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion deployment activities and information dissemination are performed IAW the TSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. XO or S2/3 supervises EOC operations.
 	
    a. Inspects entry and exit procedures for compliance with the physical security plan.
 	
    b. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned members.
 	
    c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the TSOP.
 	
    d. Provides briefings on current situation to the commander, as required.
 	
2. Staff Sections perform EOC deployment support duties.
 	
    a. Maintain staff journal(s) and entries IAW current command policy and TSOP.
 	
    b. Maintain section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Maintain current maps and overlays depicting all routes and locations that affect the EOC's operation. d. Maintain current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily EOC and section journal entries. e. Submit deployment readiness reports to appropriate HQ and installation EOC IAW TSOP and commander's guidance, as required. 3. Staff Sections monitor movement of subordinate units' equipment to APOE and SPOE. NOTE: For digitally equipped units, these actions will be performed using FBCB2, MTS, or MCS. a. Monitor rail loading, convoy staging, and other movement activities (for example commercial transport arrival at airfields for compliance with the movement order.) b. Maintain communications with each subordinate unit IAW movement order and TSOP. c. Monitor SP, checkpoint, RP, and closing reports from convoy commanders for compliance with movement order. d. Post subordinate units' movement progress on the situation map. e. Annotate subordinate units' march progress on road movement graphs. f. Provide corrective actions to subordinate units when deviations from movement order occur (speed, interval, and route adjustments). g. Provide coordination for emergency support between subordinate units and area support units, based on the type and level of emergency. h. Provide current movement status of subordinate units to the S2/3 and commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Record closing reports from subordinate units upon receipt. j. Provide final movement report upon receipt of all closing reports to commander and appropriate HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section

TASK: Supervise Battalion Deployment/Redeployment Activities (63-1-4853) (FM 100-17, AR 220-10, FM 100-10, FM 3-0, FM 101-5, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | | | | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The RSOP, movement plan/order, and other required documents are available. Battalion deployment/redeployment activities have commenced. The battalion is located in the home station UAA or RAA and the EOC/CP is established. The gaining command has provided a deployment/redeployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The battalion HQ communicates with the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, supporting organizations, subordinate units, and rear detachment by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment/redeployment activities are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs deployment/redeployment activities.		
a. Identifies deployment/redeployment mission requirements by reviewing warning order and appropriate CONPLANs.		
b. Provides initial planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.		
c. Directs S1 to coordinate SRP processing.		
d. Directs personnel and equipment cross-leveling actions.		
e. Submits recommendations to appropriate HQ commander that selected personnel attending formal school be allowed to complete course work, if appropriate (deployment only).		
f. Directs recall of personnel on temporary duty, attending school, or in authorized leave status, if appropriate (deployment only).		
g. Directs S2/3 to issue deployment/redeployment WARNO and movement plan/order.		
h. Directs implementation of physical security and OPSEC plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Briefs staff and subordinate units on deployment/ redeployment mission.		
j. Conducts overseas orientation.		
k. Verifies subordinate commanders clear installation prior to deployment.		
l. Conducts periodic in-process reviews to monitor preparations for deployment, issue and exchange detailed guidance, refine movement plans, resolve issues, and coordinate support for the deployment.		
m. Conducts liaison to higher HQ, as required.		
n. Coordinates with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office for briefings regarding legal considerations (such as Law of War, Status of Forces, Rules of Engagement, and Code of Conduct).		
o. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications.		
p. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
*2. XO supervises staff activities.		
a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.		
b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement plan/order.		
c. Directs staff sections to provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams (such as advance party and rear detachment.)		
d. Directs staff sections to provide input for movement plan/order update.		
e. Formulates staff operating policies.		
f. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates deployment/redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.		
h. Supervises the operations of the EOC/CP.		
*3. Staff officers supervise staff sections.		
a. Identify all specified and implied tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy/redeploy by reviewing the movement directive, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs, and commander's guidance.		
b. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to the deployment/redeployment with other staff sections.		
c. Provide information update(s) to commander and EOC/CP on areas that are critical to the deployment/redeployment mission.		
d. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's overseas orientation, as required.		
e. Provide personnel for deployment/redeployment teams, as required.		
f. Forward deployment/redeployment status reports to appropriate HQ and addressees, as required.		
g. Forward personnel and logistics reports IAW higher HQ guidance.		
4. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units.		
a. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of proficiency as prescribed in TSOP, plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP.		
b. Monitors external support to determine overall effectiveness, IAW TSOP.		
c. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate units' compliance.		
e. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the movement plan/order and annexes, as required.		
*5. Commander and/or XO supervises rear detachment activities.		
a. Appoints rear detachment commander.		
b. Approves rear detachment staffing.		
c. Approves rear detachment plan.		
d. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan.		
e. Coordinates with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office.		
6. S1 Section performs deployment activities.		
a. Coordinates PAO briefings for deploying units.		
b. Verifies appropriate personnel transactions are input for all deploying soldiers once soldiers have completed SRP processing.		
c. Coordinates with legal representatives on pending legal actions for deploying soldiers.		
d. Coordinates SRB processing.		
e. Maintains personnel asset visibility.		
f. Completes legal actions, as directed by commander.		
7. Staff sections perform readiness activities.		
a. Identify readiness shortfalls of subordinate units based on current USR.		
b. Evaluate subordinate units' ability to perform mission requirements based on USRs and other status reports required by higher HQ, such as the CSSCS generated PERSTAT and LOGSTAT reports.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Develop plan to correct deficiencies to bring subordinate units to deployment standards. d. Back up all automated systems prior to systems being prepared for movement. e. Brief battalion commander on readiness activities and status of subordinate units. f. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and applicable publications. g. Enforce environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Update Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4854) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, DOD 4500.32-R VOL 1, DOD 4500.32-R, VOL 2, FM 100-17, FM 55-1, FM 55-65)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The movement directive, SRP processing information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The commander has directed that the movement plan/order be updated, and the XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The commander has provided his deployment guidance and concept of operations. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, movement plan/order, and CONPLAN/OPLAN are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The movement plan/order is updated IAW appropriate FM, the RSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance and within the time prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. XO and S2/3 perform a time analysis.
 	
    a. Calculate total time remaining before deployment/ redeployment commences (C-Day).
 	
    b. Identify all steps in the deployment/redeployment process.
 	
    c. Assign time limitation for each step in the deployment/ redeployment process.
 	
    d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.
 	
2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for deployment teams.
 	
    a. Identifies personnel, equipment, and accompanying supplies for deployment, to include configuration of equipment as offered for shipment.
 	
    b. Coordinates deployment team requirements with staff sections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.		
d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for deployment teams into updated movement plan/order.		
3. Staff sections provide input to movement plan/order update.		
a. Identify internal mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs.		
b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing RSOP and status reports from subordinate units.		
c. Adjust preplanned requirements, as required.		
d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or installation deployment support organizations.		
e. Update appropriate staff portions of the movement plan/order, as required.		
f. Provide updated movement plan/order input to S2/3 Section.		
4. S2/3 Section updates movement plan/order.		
a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.		
b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order with annexes.		
c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.		
d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list using analog and digital communications or MCS, as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Soldier Readiness Program Processing Support (63-1-4855) (AR 220-10, AR 600-8-104, AR 600-8-19, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, FM 100-17)

| **ITERATION** | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion commander has directed SRP processing to be conducted and the orientation for the new AO be prepared. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The movement directive, deployment message, RSOP, and movement plan/order, maps, overlays and other required documents are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, installation deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: SRP processing support is coordinated IAW RSOP, commander's guidance, appropriate AR, and a SRP processing schedule is distributed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. S1 supervises SRP processing.
 	
        a. Identifies deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message.
 	
        b. Approves SRP processing schedule.
 	
        c. Monitors SRP processing for compliance with TSOP and SRP processing schedule.
 	
        d. Coordinates adjustments to the processing schedule with the Processing Center and appropriate subordinate unit.
 	
        e. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of SRP processing, as required.
 	
2. S1 Section coordinates SRP processing support.
 	
        a. Identifies SRP processing requirements by reviewing TSOP, movement directive, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Requests staff elements and subordinate units to provide SRP processing support, as appropriate.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Coordinates SRP processing support with the appropriate HQ.
 	
    d. Submits SRP processing requests and deploying personnel rosters to SRP processing support organizations IAW TSOP.
 	
3. S1 Section publishes SRP processing schedule.
 	
    a. Verifies SRP processing date and time with installation EOC and appropriate supporting organizations.
 	
    b. Prepares SRP processing schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with installation EOC and supporting organizations.
 	
    c. Submits SRP processing schedule to S1 for approval or modification.
 	
    d. Distributes SRP processing schedule to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units.
 	
4. Staff sections prepare input to commander's overseas orientation.
 	
    a. Identify mission support requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment information message, commander's guidance, and appropriate CONPLAN/OPLANs.
 	
    b. Identify characteristics of theater of operations that impact on unit's mission performance (for example topography, climate, demographics, political stability, medical threat, traditions, and customs).
 	
    c. Provide commander's overseas orientation input to S2/3 Section.
 	
5. S1 Section prepares the commander's overseas orientation.
 	
    a. Verifies staff input for completeness.
 	
    b. Prepares commander's overseas orientation briefing and supporting material.
 	
    c. Forwards overseas orientation briefing material to commander or XO.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Human Resources Support (63-1-4856) (<u>AR 220-10</u>, AR 215-1, AR 220-1, AR 25-400-2, AR 600-8-104, AR 614-185, AR 614-200, DA PAM 600-8-2, FM 12-6)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Adjustments to unit strengths and coordination for administrative support are required prior to the battalion's deployment to an overseas site. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. SRP processing has been completed. The movement directive, deployment information message, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The S1 Section continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, and deployment support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and administrative services support is provided IAW appropriate FMs and ARs, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S1 supervises personnel readiness actions.		
a. Directs personnel screening.		
b. Recommends to commander cross-leveling actions and disposition of personnel on TDY, attending school, in authorized leave status, and identified as nondeployable.		
c. Directs recall of personnel on TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW commander's guidance.		
d. Directs cross-leveling of personnel IAW commander's guidance.		
e. Coordinates personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel with higher echelon S1.		
f. Directs disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 instructions.		
g. Briefs commander and XO on personnel readiness status, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S1 Section performs personnel screening. 　　　a. Identifies officer and enlisted personnel attending service schools, TDY, and in authorized leave status. 　　　b. Recalls personnel on TDY, attending school, and in authorized leave status IAW S1's guidance. 　　　c. Reports all unfilled school quotas to higher echelon S1. 　　　d. Identifies individual deployability criteria by reviewing deployment message. 　　　e. Identifies nondeployable personnel by reviewing personnel records, SRP processing results, and commander's guidance. 　　　f. Prepares deployment personnel status report. 　　　g. Forwards list of personnel who have completed the SRP processing to S1. 　　　h. Briefs S1 on battalion deployment personnel status. 3. S1 Section performs cross-leveling of personnel. 　　　a. Identifies personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification by reviewing personnel status reports. 　　　b. Verifies personnel overages and shortages by reviewing subordinate units' personnel status reports. 　　　c. Redistributes personnel within the battalion based on S1 and commander's guidance. 　　　d. Transfers nondeployable personnel as directed by higher HQ. 　　　e. Recalculates personnel overages and shortages by grade, MOS, and MOS qualification. 　　　f. Submits enlisted requisitions. 　　　g. Submits officer requisitions. 　　　h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

4. S1 Section performs personnel disposition functions.
 	
  a. Forwards copies of movement directive to school commandant(s) for personnel who will join unit in theater upon completion of school.
 	
  b. Requests disposition instructions for excess and nondeployable personnel from higher echelon S1 Section.
 	
  c. Reassigns excess and nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions.
 	
  d. Clears unavailable, nondeployable personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions.
 	
5. S1 Section performs personnel replacement functions.
 	
  a. Notifies higher S1 of shortages.
 	
  b. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance.
 	
6. S1 Section provides personnel services support.
 	
  a. Identifies personnel service requirements by reviewing the movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, and RSOP.
 	
  b. Submits requests for personnel services support from the higher echelon S1, as required.
 	
  c. Coordinates postal support with supporting AG.
 	
  d. Coordinates for recreational equipment and services with the installation Recreational Services Officer.
 	
  e. Coordinates Red Cross support with the local ARC office.
 	
  f. Coordinates religious support with installation chaplain.
 	
  g. Coordinates press and home town news releases with the installation PAO.
 	
  h. Coordinates disposition of POV and storage of personal property with PMO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

i. Appoints subordinate unit Class A agents on battalion orders, as required.
 	
     j. Closes out unit funds IAW the RSOP.
 	
     k. Coordinates legal services/support with the servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office.
 	
     l. Provides personnel services input for the movement plan/order to the S2/3 Section.
 	
 7. S1 Section provides records management support.
 	
     a. Identifies personnel records to accompany unit to theater of operations.
 	
     b. Identifies records to be transferred to records holding area.
 	
     c. Directs units to prepare and maintain abbreviated records.
 	
     d. Provides records management input for the rear detachment plan to the S2/3 Section.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Coordinate Family Assistance Support (63-1-4857) (AR 608-18, AR 215-1, AR 608-1, FM 100-17)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for family assistance are received from subordinate units and individual families. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The family assistance plan, RSOP, and movement plan/order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the ITO and installation support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Family assistance support is coordinated and the updated family assistance plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. S1 supervises family assistance support activities.		
a. Appoints Family Assistance Officer(s), as required.		
b. Approves updated family assistance plan.		
c. Monitors family assistance briefings and activities for compliance with the family assistance plan and commander's guidance.		
d. Briefs commander, XO, subordinate unit commanders, and rear detachment commander on family assistance requirements and availability of support.		
2. S1 Section coordinates family assistance support.		
a. Identifies family assistance support requirements by reviewing RSOP, subordinate unit reports, and commander's guidance.		
b. Coordinates family assistance requirements with staff sections.		
c. Coordinates for input into the family assistance plan update with staff sections.		
d. Coordinates family assistance support (for example ACS, AER, SJA, and Red Cross) with installation agencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinates with the Chief of ACS and the SJA to conduct or participate in family support briefings IAW installation deployment plan.		
f. Briefs the S1 on family assistance requirements and available support.		
3. S1 Section updates family assistance plan.		
a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.		
b. Prepares updated copy of family assistance plan.		
c. Forwards draft copy to S1 for approval or modification.		
d. Distributes updated family assistance plan IAW RSOP.		
4. S1 Section provides support to families.		
a. Establishes family assistance briefing site and schedules.		
b. Prepares family assistance information packet detailing available support.		
c. Conducts family assistance briefings IAW briefing schedule.		
d. Provides family assistance information packet to families.		
e. Refers personnel requiring assistance to appropriate agencies.		
5. Battalion Family Support Group representatives perform family assistance activities.		
a. Communicate with all unit level representatives at least once every week during deployment.		
b. Conduct battalion FSG meetings with unit level representatives to address family member concerns.		
c. Disseminate information through FSG channels.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Coordinate Deployment Training Support (63-1-4858) (<u>AR 350-1</u>, AR 220-1, AR 220-10, FM 100-17, TC 25-1, TC 25-20, TC 25-8)

    ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Training deficiencies exist within the battalion. Training is required before the battalion deploys to an overseas site. Training status reports are being received from subordinate units. The movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordination for deployment training support is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. S2/3 supervises deployment training.
 	
    a. Identifies training requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement directive, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, subordinate unit training reports, and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Provides guidance on training requirements and priorities.
 	
    c. Approves training schedule.
 	
    d. Monitors training for compliance with training schedule and commander's guidance.
 	
    e. Coordinates adjustments to the training schedule with appropriate subordinate unit commanders and/or agencies providing training support, as required.
 	
    f. Verifies personnel have completed training by reviewing subordinate units training reports.
 	
    g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on status of training, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S2/3 Section publishes deployment training schedule.
 	
     a. Coordinates for training support with battalion staff and subordinate units, as required.
 	
     b. Submits training support requests to appropriate installation support agencies IAW RSOP and S2/3 guidance.
 	
     c. Prepares training schedule for subordinate units based on coordination with supporting organizations.
 	
     d. Submits training schedule to S2/3 for approval or modification.
 	
     e. Distributes training schedule to appropriate staff sections and subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Perform Deployment Intelligence Support Functions (63-1-4859) (<u>FM 34-1</u>, AR 190-13,
               AR 380-19-1, AR 380-5, AR 530-1, FM 34-80)

ITERATION			1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. The OPSEC Plan, Physical Security Plan, standing signal instructions/standing signal instructions, movement directive, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and deployment message are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The TSOPs are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence is disseminated to subordinate units and intelligence support functions are accomplished IAW higher echelon S2 instructions, RSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/3 Section implements physical security procedures.		
a. Designates the EOC as a restricted area.		
b. Provides access roster of personnel authorized access to restricted areas.		
c. Provides list of authorized classified document couriers, security managers, custodians, and alternates to appropriate HQ.		
d. Provides a list of area physical security actions taken to appropriate HQ.		
e. Monitors physical security activities for compliance with Physical Security Plan, RSOP, and commander's guidance.		
2. S2/3 Section implements commander's OPSEC program.		
a. Conducts OPSEC analysis to identify OPSEC requirements.		
b. Updates OPSEC Plan based on analysis.		
c. Implements the OPSEC Plan.		
d. Provides feedback on status of OPSEC program to commander and subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Provides OPSEC input to appropriate orders and plans.		
f. Coordinates for an OPSEC sweep of battalion HQ and subordinate units with installation MI detachment.		
g. Conducts OPSEC briefings, as required.		
3. S2/3 Section provides classified documents and map services.		
a. Identifies classified documents and map requirements by reviewing requests from subordinate units, RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, and commander's guidance.		
b. Submits request for classified maps to the higher HQ S2 Section.		
c. Submits requisitions for classified documents through appropriate channels.		
d. Distributes classified documents and maps to staff and subordinate units, as appropriate.		
e. Requests disposition instructions for classified documents not required from higher echelon S2.		
f. Publishes policies and procedures for transfer of classified documents IAW higher echelon S2 instructions.		
g. Maintains accountability of classified documents.		
4. S2/3 Section performs personnel security functions.		
a. Identifies security clearance requirements by reviewing RSOP, deployment OPLAN/OPORD, deployment message, and commander's guidance.		
b. Verifies security clearance of deploying soldiers.		
c. Submits request for security clearances to higher echelon S2/3.		
d. Provides instructions to subordinate units on the removal of unit patches, badges, and unit insignia on clothing and equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

5. S2/3 Section implements SIGSEC procedures.
 	
    a. Provides SIGSEC guidance to staff and subordinate units.
 	
    b. Monitors all methods of unit communications for compliance with SOI/SSI and RSOP.
 	
    c. Briefs the S2/3 on SIGSEC activities.
 	
6. S2/3 Section provides intelligence briefings on theater of operations.
 	
    a. Coordinates with commander to identify commander's information requirements.
 	
    b. Requests current intelligence and background information on the theater of operations from higher echelon S2.
 	
    c. Conducts analysis of theater of operations by reviewing deployment OPLAN/OPORD and appropriate publications.
 	
    d. Develops intelligence briefing on theater of operations.
 	
    e. Submits briefing to S2/3 for approval or modification.
 	
    f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate units on characteristics of the theater of operations and potential impact on support operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Provide Deployment Logistics Support (63-1-4860) (<u>AR 725-50</u>, AR 220-1, AR 710-2, AR 710-3, FM 100-17, FM 3-100.4, TM 38-250)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a deployment warning order and the commander has issued his guidance. The movement directive, movement plan/order, deployment message, RSOP, port call messages, subordinate unit Automated Unit Equipment List, and OPLAN/CONPLAN annexes are available. All subordinate units are deploying as part of the battalion deployment. Equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, ITO, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Deployment logistics support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for requisitioning, issue, or cross-leveling of vehicles, supplies, and equipment is accomplished IAW RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. S4 supervises deployment logistics support activities.
 	
    a. Identifies logistics requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and subordinate unit supply, maintenance, and movement status reports.
 	
    b. Recommends cross-leveling actions to the commander.
 	
    c. Directs cross-leveling of supplies and equipment IAW commander's guidance.
 	
    d. Directs disposition of excess supplies and equipment IAW higher echelon S4 instructions.
 	
    e. Prioritizes equipment, requiring support maintenance IAW commander's guidance.
 	
    f. Submits request to higher HQ staff element for activation of additional UICs for deploying elements, as needed.
 	
    g. Monitors supply and maintenance activities for compliance with movement SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

h. Monitors movement preparation activities for compliance with RSOP, mobilization plan (RC), movement plans, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.
 	
    i. Directs units to turn in keys to unit buildings and areas to rear detachment commander prior to main body departing.
 	
    j. Briefs commander and XO on logistics readiness status, as required.
 	
    k. Obtains deployment project code to facilitate rapid supply actions.
 	
    l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
2. S4 Section provides supply and services support.
 	
    a. Identifies special equipment and/or clothing requirements by reviewing movement directive, deployment message, and OPLAN/CONPLAN.
 	
    b. Coordinates issue of special equipment and/or clothing with higher echelon S4, installation Director of Logistics, and appropriate supporting agencies.
 	
    c. Coordinates emergency calibration of deploying equipment.
 	
    d. Updates supply requisitions with correct force activity designator, deployment UICs, and deployment ship to address, as needed.
 	
    e. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a deployment address.
 	
    f. Coordinates disposition of excess equipment and clothing with higher echelon S4 and/or installation DOL.
 	
    g. Submits requisitions for containers, MHE, blocking, bracing, and packing materials to appropriate supporting agencies IAW RSOP.
 	
    h. Provides disposition instructions for excess equipment and clothing to subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

i. Coordinates pick-up of basic and prescribed loads with higher echelon S4 Section or installation DOL.
 	
        j. Provides instruction for pick-up of basic and prescribed loads to subordinate units.
 	
        k. Coordinates POL support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL.
 	
        l. Monitors the preparation of basic and prescribed loads for compliance with RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.
 	
        m. Briefs S4, as required.
 	
        n. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.
 	
        o. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
 3. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies.
 	
        a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports.
 	
        b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment, and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance.
 	
        c. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section.
 	
        d. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section.
 	
        e. Verifies all equipment transactions have been completed and equipment is properly signed for by reviewing property book and unit hand receipts.
 	
        f. Updates property book, as required.
 	
        g. Briefs S4, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		
i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
4. S4 Section provides maintenance support.		
a. Identifies maintenance requirements by reviewing RSOP, status reports from subordinate units, and commander's guidance.		
b. Provides MST support to subordinate units, as required.		
c. Coordinates for maintenance support, status of vehicles and equipment in support maintenance, disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment, and float equipment support with supporting maintenance activity.		
d. Provides instructions on the disposition of nondeployable vehicles and equipment and float equipment support to subordinate units.		
e. Coordinates maintenance support at the APOE/SPOE staging area with supporting installation.		
f. Submits vehicles and equipment to support maintenance IAW S4 instructions.		
g. Coordinates maintenance support for movement to A/SPOE with higher echelon S4 or installation DOL.		
h. Briefs S4, as required.		
i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
j. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		
5. S4 Section provides movement support.		
a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and subordinate unit AUELs.		
b. Verifies that subordinate unit personnel and equipment transportation requirements have been submitted and are accurate by coordinating with unit movement officer.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Requests scales and MHE support from DOL, as required and reviewing deployment equipment list.		
e. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and movement schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC.		
f. Coordinates convoy clearances and special hauling permits with the IC-unit movement coordinator (UMO), as required.		
g. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity.		
h. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with the UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled.		
i. Coordinates for return transportation support for battalion personnel from the SPOE to battalion area with UMC.		
j. Coordinates advance party and main body personnel transportation requirements to the APOE with appropriate HQ.		
k. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary.		
l. Briefs S4, as required.		
m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
n. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		
*6. S4 coordinates SPOE MA activities.		
a. Monitors staging and processing of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement order, call forward instructions, and supporting installation officials' instructions.		
b. Resolves vehicle and equipment processing deficiencies by coordinating with supporting installation officials.		
c. Coordinates disposition of frustrated vehicles and cargo with supporting installation personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Provides movement and documentation assistance to subordinate unit UMOs, as required. d. Verifies arrangement for supercargoes by coordinating with port commander's representatives. e. Briefs S4, as required. f. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. g. Enforces safety procedures IAW TSOP and publications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                  S1 Section
                  S2/3 Section
                  S4 Section
                  Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
                  Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Perform Deployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4861) (FM 100-17, FM 55-65, TM 38-250)

ITERATION		1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT					T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a movement warning order for deployment. Subordinate units provide personnel and equipment for the advance party. The movement plan/order, RSOP, advance party plan, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Logistics and movement support is provided to the advance party by the supporting installation and MTMC, respectively. Theater logistics support is provided to the advance party by the combatant commander's designated support organization. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section plans advance party operations.
 	
    a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Updates advance party plan IAW commander's guidance.
 	
    c. Coordinates personnel and equipment for the advance party with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan.
 	
    d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party predeployment activities.
 	
    a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/3 and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with S4 Section.
 	
    c. Coordinates for movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO.
 	
    d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order, subordinate unit DELs, and CONPLAN/OPLANs.
 	
    e. Identifies planned operational locations and mission support requirements by reviewing CONPLAN/OPLANs.
 	
    f. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/3.
 	
    g. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required.
 	
3. Advance party deploys through APOE to APOD.
 	
    a. Prepares vehicles for air movement.
 	
    b. Deploys IAW movement order.
 	
    c. Performs APOD activities for deployment.
 	
4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body.
 	
    a. Coordinates for arrival schedule and reception of the main body with AACG.
 	
    b. Coordinates for movement of personnel to marshaling area with PMCT.
 	
    c. Coordinate for ship arrival schedule and movement of equipment to TSB with PSA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

d. Provides personnel to port commander for movement of equipment from PSA to marshaling area, as required.
 	
    e. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to PMCT.
 	
    f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with designated supporting organization.
 	
    g. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required.
 	
5. Advance party coordinates mission operations.
 	
    a. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to appropriate HQ.
 	
    b. Coordinates for current operational and tactical situation with higher echelon S2/3 Section.
 	
    c. Identifies preliminary liaison requirements with supporting and supported activities.
 	
    d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on operational and tactical situation, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                S1 Section
                S2/3 Section
                S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Onward Movement (63-1-4862) (<u>FM 100-17-3</u>, FM 100-17, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

      ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate unit main bodies have arrived at the APOD. The advance party OIC has briefed the commander and staff on the support available in the marshaling/staging area. The PSA moves the battalion's vehicles and equipment from the SPOD to the marshaling/staging area. Administrative and logistics support is provided by an organization designated by the combatant commander. Movement control element provides movement instructions from the TSB to the TAA. The RSOP and TSOP are available. Movement control element monitors battalion's movement to the TAA. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The main body arrives in the TAA IAW movement control element instructions and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section supervises onward movement activities.		
a. Coordinates for tactical situation and future support operation information with higher echelon staff.		
b. Provides staff sections guidance on intransit support requirements and onward movement priorities.		
c. Establishes liaison with supporting organizations that are providing intransit support and movement instructions.		
d. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as required.		
2. S2/3 Section supervises preparation and movement to assembly areas.		
a. Consolidates staff input for intransit support and movement instructions.		
b. Issues movement order/FRAGO and maps IAW commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Monitors subordinate unit preparation for convoy operations for compliance with movement order/FRAGO.		
d. Monitors movement of unit.		
e. Forwards SP crossing reports, checkpoint times, and closing reports to supporting movement control element.		
f. Reports arrival in assembly area to higher echelon S2/3 Section.		
g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
3. S1 Section coordinates intransit support.		
a. Coordinates human resources support with designated support unit, as required.		
b. Coordinates medical support with designated medical support unit, as required.		
c. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support.		
4. S4 Section coordinates marshaling/staging area logistics support.		
a. Coordinates field feeding and logistics support with designated support unit, as required.		
b. Provides instructions to subordinate units on inventory, inspection, and property transfer and accountability procedures.		
c. Identifies maintenance and repair parts requirements by monitoring subordinate unit maintenance status reports.		
d. Coordinates maintenance and repair parts support with designated support unit, as required.		
e. Provides instructions to subordinate units on drawing weapons, fuel, ammunition, and supplies required for movement to assembly area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on intransit support. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures. *5. S4 coordinates movement to assembly area. a. Coordinates for detailed movement instructions with supporting movement control element. b. Provides movement instructions to S2/3 Section. c. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with appropriate publication, movement order, and SOP. d. Monitors vehicle preparation and rail loading operations for compliance with movement instructions, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance. e. Monitors preparation of movement documentation for compliance with appropriate publications and movement control element instructions. f. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders/ UMOs on movement, as required. g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Rear Detachment Support (63-1-4863) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, AR 215-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 55-65)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: Rear detachment support is required. All subordinate units are deploying/redeploying as part of the battalion deployment/redeployment. The rear detachment plan, RSOP, and deployment/redeployment movement plan/order are available. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation or theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment support is coordinated and the updated rear detachment plan is distributed IAW the RSOP and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S1 Section coordinates rear detachment human resources support.		
a. Identifies human resources support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, and commander's guidance.		
b. Coordinates rear detachment staffing requirements with staff sections and subordinate unit commanders.		
c. Forwards recommendations for rear detachment staffing to commander for approval.		
d. Coordinates human resources support with higher echelon S1 Section or installation/theater support organizations, as required.		
e. Provides human resources support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/3 Section.		
f. Coordinates family support group assistance with higher echelon S1.		
g. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on human resources support, as required.		
h. Coordinates legal support with servicing Staff judge Advocate's office.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S4 Section coordinates for rear detachment logistics support.
 	
        a. Identifies logistics support requirements by reviewing the deployment/redeployment movement plan/order, RSOP, rear detachment plan, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Coordinates logistics support with higher echelon S4 Section or installation/theater support organizations.
 	
        c. Provides copies of property book, document register, and related documentation to the rear detachment commander, as required.
 	
        d. Provides logistics support input for the rear detachment plan update to the S2/3 Section.
 	
        e. Briefs the commander, XO, and rear detachment commander on rear detachment logistics support, as required.
 	
3. S2/3 Section updates rear detachment plan.
 	
        a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Prepares updated copy of rear detachment plan.
 	
        c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.
 	
        d. Distributes rear detachment plan update IAW RSOP.
 	
4. S2/3 Section provides rear detachment support.
 	
        a. Requests new classified document access roster and safe access listing for the rear detachment from higher HQ staff element.
 	
        b. Coordinates changing of combinations for safes and arms room for the rear detachment with higher HQ staff element.
 	
        c. Assists rear detachment to ensure all classified material not deployed with unit is properly stored, transferred, or destroyed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                 S1 Section
                 S2/3 Section
                 S4 Section
                 Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
                 Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Perform Home Station Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4864) (FM 100-17, FM 12-6, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

	ITERATION			1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate units' main bodies are preparing to depart home station. The staff has completed initial coordination for personnel and administrative services and logistics support. Subordinate units have delivered records and files designated by the S1 to the rear detachment. Dependents have been briefed on the availability of support from the installation and rear detachment. The RSOP, movement plan/order, family assistance plan, and rear detachment plan are available. The rear detachment receives home station reception requirements from S2/3 Section. The rear detachment continuously receives messages from the installation and higher echelon HQ by analog and/or digital communications. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear detachment activities are performed IAW the rear detachment plan and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. Rear detachment commander supervises rear detachment activities.
 	
     a. Identifies rear detachment requirements, policies, and procedures by reviewing the rear detachment plan, family assistance plan, and commander's guidance.
 	
     b. Conducts inventory and signs for all installation property and equipment transferred into rear detachment from deploying units.
 	
     c. Publishes a chain of command based on commander's guidance.
 	
     d. Develops rear detachment program to provide service to soldiers and family remaining in rear.
 	
     e. Briefs rear detachment personnel on rear detachment plan and command policies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Verifies availability of personnel and administrative services, legal support, and logistics support by coordinating with the installation AG, SJA, and DOL.		
g. Briefs rear detachment personnel on available personnel and administrative services, legal support, and logistics support.		
h. Monitors family support group activities for compliance with family assistance plan.		
i. Monitors rear detachment activities for compliance with rear detachment plan.		
j. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
2. Rear detachment provides administrative and logistics support.		
a. Coordinates SRP processing of late arrivals and/or replacement personnel with the installation AG.		
b. Provides split base operations support to the deployed part of the unit.		
c. Provides administrative, legal, and logistics support to late arrivals and/or replacement personnel IAW rear detachment plan.		
d. Redirects mail IAW rear detachment plan.		
e. Maintains records and files IAW rear detachment plan and appropriate publications.		
f. Provides assistance to families IAW the family assistance plan, as required.		
g. Publishes family support chain of command roster for family member.		
h. Coordinates reassignment of rear detachment personnel with the installation AG.		
i. Coordinates inspection and disposition of real property with supporting installation agency, as necessary.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

j. Conducts physical security inspections of facilities and storage areas.
 	
    k. Reports damage to facilities and storage areas to PMO and installation engineers.
 	
    l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
3. Rear detachment commander coordinates reception at home station.
 	
    a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing the RSOP and S2/3 Section instructions.
 	
    b. Verifies availability of transportation and intransit support by coordinating with the ITO.
 	
    c. Identifies planned welcoming ceremonies by coordinating with installation support activities and PAO.
 	
    d. Coordinates for transportation of dependents to the APOD with ITO, as required.
 	
    e. Notifies dependents of transportation and reception plans.
 	
    f. Provides S2/3 Section information on transportation, intransit support, and welcoming ceremonies.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Reconstitution for Redeployment (63-1-4865) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65, TM 38-250, TM 55-2200-001-12)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment warning order and the commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the designated AA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The RSOP and redeployment warning order are available.

NOTE: The TAA and RAA may be combined, depending on the size of the theater and the combatant commander's guidance. The redeployment sequence is based on theater constraints and CINC's guidance. Intermediate steps and actions may be required to supplement TAA and RAA movement, to include further defining RAA activities by establishing a final staging area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reconstitution for redeployment is coordinated IAW RSOP and commander's guidance and regulations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S1 Section coordinates cross-leveling of personnel.
 	
    a. Identifies personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS by reviewing subordinate unit's status reports.
 	
    b. Reassigns personnel within the battalion IAW commander's guidance.
 	
    c. Recalculates personnel shortages and overages by grade and MOS.
 	
    d. Submits personnel requisitions to higher echelon S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    e. Requests disposition instructions for excess personnel from higher echelon S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    f. Assigns filler personnel IAW S1 guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Reassigns excess personnel IAW higher echelon S1 Section instructions. h. Updates SIDPERS records, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on personnel status, as required. 2. S4 Section coordinates cross-leveling of vehicles, equipment, and supplies. a. Identifies shortages and overages by reviewing subordinate unit's vehicle, equipment, and supply status reports. b. Reallocates vehicles, equipment, and supplies within the battalion IAW commander's guidance. c. Recalculates shortages and overages. d. Submits requisitions for vehicles, equipment, and supplies to higher echelon S4 Section using analog and/or digital communications. e. Requests disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies from higher echelon S4 Section. f. Issues vehicles, equipment, and supplies IAW commander and S4's guidance. g. Provides subordinate units disposition instructions for excess vehicles, equipment, and supplies. h. Updates property book, as required. i. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and supplies, as required. j. Enforces environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Prepare Redeployment Movement Plan/Order (63-1-4866) (<u>FM 55-1</u>, FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-30)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his redeployment guidance and directed that the redeployment movement plan/order be prepared. The XO has assigned staff responsibilities. The S2/3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the redeployment movement plan/order. Movement plan becomes movement order upon implementation. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. Trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4 and/or ICUMO. The home station rear detachment commander provides information on reception arrangements. The RSOP, TSOP, and higher echelon redeployment movement order are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment movement plan/order is prepared and distributed IAW regulations, the RSOP, and commander's guidance and within the time frame prescribed by the commander or XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Staff sections provide input to the redeployment movement plan/order.
 	
    a. Identify redeployment requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOPs, and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Identify external support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and status reports from subordinate units.
 	
    c. Identify internal support requirements by reviewing redeployment movement order, RSOP, and commander's guidance.
 	
    d. Verify availability of required support by coordinating with appropriate battalion elements and/or redeployment support organizations.
 	
    e. Forward redeployment movement plan/order input information to S2/3 Section.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S2/3 Section coordinates staffing for redeployment teams.
 	
        a. Identifies personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Coordinates redeployment teams requirements with staff sections.
 	
        c. Forwards personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams to commander and/or XO for approval or modification.
 	
        d. Incorporates personnel and equipment requirements for redeployment teams into movement plan/order.
 	
3. S2/3 Section coordinates TAA and RAA physical security requirements.
 	
        a. Identifies TAA and RAA physical security requirements by reviewing TSOP, higher echelon redeployment movement order, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Coordinates physical security support with higher echelon S2/3 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
        c. Coordinates physical security requirements with subordinate units.
 	
        d. Incorporates TAA and RAA physical security instructions into movement plan/order.
 	
4. S2/3 Section coordinates reception at home station.
 	
        a. Identifies reception requirements by reviewing RSOP, movement plan/order, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Forwards reception requirements and projected personnel movement schedules to home station rear detachment commander.
 	
        c. Incorporates planned reception arrangements into the movement plan/order.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

5. S2/3 Section prepares movement plan/order.
 	
    a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Prepares updated copy of movement plan/order.
 	
    c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.
 	
    d. Distributes movement plan/order update IAW movement plan/order distribution list.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Provide Redeployment Support (63-1-4867) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 100-10, FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA and trained UMOs have been designated and briefed by the S4. The battalion commander has issued redeployment guidance. The battalion and higher echelon redeployment movement orders, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define unit elements remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. Its mission is to process unit equipment and supplies for return to home station. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Redeployment support is provided to subordinate units and coordination for movement of personnel, vehicles, and equipment to the A/SPOE is accomplished IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S1 Section provides personnel and administrative services support.
 	
    a. Identifies human resources requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Establishes redeployment personnel processing procedures IAW higher echelon guidance.
 	
    c. Coordinates reassignment of personnel redeploying as individuals with higher echelon S1 using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    d. Provides personnel service support, as required.
 	
    e. Provides administrative support, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Verifies personnel and finance records have been updated by reviewing subordinate unit records.		
g. Verifies line of duty investigations have been completed prior to redeployment.		
h. Processes personnel actions, to include evaluation reports and decorations and awards.		
i. Coordinates (theater) rear detachment human resources support with higher echelon S1 using analog and/or digital communications.		
j. Coordinates legal services with servicing Staff Judge Advocate's Office.		
2. S2/3 Section coordinates training requirements.		
a. Identifies training requirements (such as weighing and marking, customs inspections, cleaning of vehicles and equipment, and documentation requirements) by reviewing appropriate headquarters redeployment movement order, subordinate unit requests for training support, and commander's guidance.		
b. Coordinates redeployment training support with higher echelon S2/3 using analog and digital communications.		
c. Notifies subordinate units of scheduled training events.		
d. Monitors scheduled training events for compliance with appropriate publications and commander's guidance.		
e. Updates training records, as required.		
3. S4 Section coordinates supply and services support.		
a. Identifies supply and services support requirements.		
b. Identifies quantities of supplies on-hand by reviewing subordinate unit supply status reports.		
c. Identifies supplies due-in by reviewing document registers.		
d. Identifies excess supplies due-in by comparing supply requirements with quantities on-hand and due-in.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Cancels requisitions for quantities determined to be excess.		
f. Identifies required supplies arriving after unit is packed for redeployment by coordinating with DS supply organization.		
g. Verifies all requisitions have been either canceled or updated with a redeployment address ten days prior to redeployment.		
h. Submits request to redirect supplies due-in after unit is packed to higher echelon S4 or supporting supply activity, as needed.		
i. Coordinates field feeding and services support with designated support unit, as required.		
j. Designates date/time when internal supply and service support terminates.		
k. Provides copies of the unit hand receipts and related documentation to OIC of the (theater) rear detachment, as required.		
l. Coordinates supply and service support for main body and (theater) rear detachment during movement with higher echelon S4 using analog and digital communications.		
m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
4. S4 Section coordinates maintenance support.		
a. Identifies maintenance support requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
b. Identifies vehicles in organizational and support maintenance by reviewing subordinate unit and battalion maintenance status reports.		
c. Identifies vehicles available for redeployment by coordinating with battalion and DS maintenance organizations.		
d. Requests disposition instructions for vehicles and equipment not available for redeployment from higher echelon S4 using analog and/or digital communications.		
e. Tasks battalion maintenance section to provide MST support in assembly areas, staging areas, and during road movement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

f. Designates date/time when organizational maintenance support terminates.
 	
      g. Coordinates maintenance and recovery support beyond unit's capability with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and digital communications.
 	
      h. Coordinates vehicle cleaning and support with higher echelon S4 or supporting logistics support organization using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
      i. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
 *5.   S4 coordinates redeployment movement.
 	
      a. Identifies redeployment movement requirements by reviewing higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
 	
      b. Verifies UMD and movement schedules, routes, and location of RAA and staging areas by coordinating with movement control element.
 	
      c. Develops milestones for planning, packing, loading, and movement operations IAW higher echelon redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.
 	
      d. Coordinates customs and USDA inspection support with higher echelon S4.
 	
      e. Monitors supporting units AUEL updates for compliance with redeployment movement order and RSOP.
 	
      f. Monitors subordinate unit's preparation of movement, customs, and USDA forms for compliance with redeployment movement order, RSOP, and appropriate publications.
 	
      g. Monitors supporting unit's vehicle and equipment preparation and cleaning for compliance with USDA guidance, RSOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.
 	
      h. Monitors subordinate unit's customs and USDA inspection results for compliance with appropriate publications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
i. Monitors subordinate unit's movement readiness status for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
j. Inspects subordinate unit's movement plans/orders for compliance with redeployment movement order and commander's guidance.		
k. Briefs commander and/or staff on movement readiness status, as required.		
l. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                        S1 Section
                        S2/3 Section
                        S4 Section
                        Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
                        Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Perform Redeployment Advance Party Activities (63-1-4868) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 101-5,
                        FM 55-65)

| **ITERATION** | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | | | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The battalion has received a redeployment movement order. All subordinate units are redeploying as part of the battalion redeployment. The movement plan/order, RSOP, and TSOP are available. The staff continuously receives messages from the redeploying support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. Logistics support is provided to the advance party by the supporting MACOM. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Advance party operations are planned and implemented IAW RSOP, movement plan/order, TSOP, and commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section plans advance party operations.
 	
    a. Identifies advance party requirements by reviewing movement order, RSOP, TSOP, and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Prepares advance party plan IAW commander's guidance.
 	
    c. Coordinates advance party personnel and equipment requirements with staff sections and subordinate units IAW advance party plan.
 	
    d. Briefs advance party OIC on advance party requirements and operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*2. Advance party OIC supervises advance party premovement activities.
 	
    a. Identifies advance party support requirements by reviewing advance party plan, movement plan/order, RSOP, and S2/3 and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Coordinates advance party logistics and transportation support with the S4 Section.
 	
    c. Coordinates for advance party movement instructions and documentation support with HHC UMO.
 	
    d. Identifies battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination by reviewing movement plan/order and subordinate unit DELs.
 	
    e. Revises advance party plan, as required, in coordination with S2/3.
 	
    f. Briefs commander, staff, subordinate unit commanders, and advance party personnel on advance party plan, as required.
 	
3. Advance party moves through APOE to APOD.
 	
    a. Prepares vehicles for air movement, as required.
 	
    b. Deploys IAW movement order.
 	
    c. Performs APOD activities for redeployment.
 	
4. Advance party coordinates reception of main body.
 	
    a. Coordinates main body arrival schedule and reception with AACG.
 	
    b. Coordinates inspection and processing procedures with USCS and USDA officials.
 	
    c. Coordinates for movement of personnel to home station with MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Provides battalion organization, movement configuration, movement schedule, and ultimate destination to MTMC representatives, supporting installation representatives, and home station UMC. e. Completes required movement documentation IAW MTMC, supporting ITO, and/or movement control element representatives. f. Coordinates main body logistics and maintenance support requirements with supporting installation, as required. g. Assists home station rear detachment with final coordination for welcome home reception activities. h. Briefs commander, staff, and subordinate unit commanders on reception and onward movement plans, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S4 Section
Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Perform Theater Rear Detachment Activities (63-1-4869) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 55-65, TM 38-250, TM 55-2200-001-12)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion and subordinate unit main bodies have redeployed. The rear detachment is located in the RAA with the battalion's vehicles and equipment. Vehicles and equipment are prepared for strategic sea movement and are waiting to be called forward to the PSA. S4 has provided copies of the unit hand receipts, document register, and related documents. MCA/MCT provides call forward instructions to the APOE and SPOE. The RSOP, TSOP, redeployment movement order, and (theater) rear detachment plan are available. The (theater) rear detachment continuously receives messages from the theater support organizations, the appropriate HQ, and battalion HQ by analog and/or digital means of communications, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. Its mission is to process unit equipment and supplies for return to home station. In this task the theater rear detachment is not a theater-level asset. The term "home station rear detachment " is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit's vehicles and equipment are transferred to the PSA and (theater) rear detachment personnel redeploy to home station IAW the (theater) rear detachment plan and redeployment movement order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. (Theater) rear detachment commander supervises (theater) rear detachment activities.
 	
        a. Identifies operational and support requirements by reviewing (theater) rear detachment plan; redeployment movement order; S1/ S4 guidance, and commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Verifies availability of personnel services, administrative services, legal support, and logistics support by coordinating with supporting organizations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Develops an inspection and maintenance schedule IAW (theater) rear detachment plan.
 	
     d. Monitors levels of personnel, administrative, legal, and logistics support to ensure appropriate levels of support are provided.
 	
     e. Directs correction of deficiencies noted during USCS and/or USDA inspections.
 	
     f. Inspects movement and property accountability documentation to verify accuracy IAW (theater) rear detachment plan and appropriate publications.
 	
     g. Forwards (theater) rear detachment status reports to battalion HQ, as required.
 	
     h. Briefs commander and/or staff of supporting logistics support organization on (theater) rear detachment activities, as required.
 	
2. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates logistics support.
 	
     a. Identifies repair parts requirements by reviewing maintenance inspection reports and the document register.
 	
     b. Identifies supply requirements by conducting inventory of supplies on-hand.
 	
     c. Forwards requisitions for required supplies and repair parts to supporting logistics support organization.
 	
     d. Coordinates receipt of supplies and repair parts with the supporting logistics support organization.
 	
     e. Coordinates field feeding and billeting support with the supporting logistics support organization.
 	
3. (Theater) rear detachment maintains vehicles and equipment.
 	
     a. Inspects vehicles and equipment IAW inspection and maintenance schedule.
 	
     b. Prepares requisitions for repair parts, as required.
 	
     c. Performs operator and organizational maintenance, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Coordinates MST support with supporting logistics support organization.		
e. Cleans vehicles to meet USDA requirements.		
4. (Theater) rear detachment coordinates movement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel.		
a. Coordinates processing of vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE with MCA/MCT and PSA.		
b. Coordinates redeployment of personnel and processing procedures with MCA/PMCT and DACG.		
c. Monitors customs and USDA inspections for compliance with the redeployment movement order and appropriate publications.		
d. Monitors joint PSA inspection to ensure vehicles and equipment meet requirements for strategic sealift.		
e. Processes vehicles and equipment for movement to the SPOE.		
f. Redeploys personnel IAW MCA/PMCT and DACG instructions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
                S1 Section
                S2/3 Section
                S4 Section

TASK: Coordinate Home Station Activities (63-1-4870) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 55-65)

    ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion has arrived at home station. Main body arrives at home station prior to equipment arrival at SPOD. The battalion receives notification of ship and (theater) rear detachment arrival from the ITO. The maintenance SOP and RSOP are available. The ITO provides movement instructions and convoy clearances. The supporting installation provides intransit logistics support. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the installation agencies and subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier.

NOTE: The term "rear detachment" in Army publications is used to refer to a group of soldiers remaining behind the main body to perform logistical and support activities. In this task the term "theater rear detachment" is used to define the rear detachment remaining in the theater AO after the main body redeploys. The term "home station rear detachment" is used to refer to the rear detachment left at the unit's home station during deployment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Home station activities are accomplished IAW commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. Commander directs post deployment activities.
 	
      a. Directs preparation of after-action reports.
 	
      b. Directs inventory and cleaning of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.
 	
      c. Directs turn-in of hand-receipted and float equipment.
 	
      d. Approves after-action report.
 	
      e. Briefs appropriate HQ commander and staff on operations in theater of operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S1 Section performs post deployment activities.
 	
    a. Coordinates personal affairs briefings, such as family and stress briefings.
 	
    b. Verifies records of deployed soldiers have been updated with deployment information and appropriate personnel actions.
 	
    c. Processes SIDPERS transactions for redeploying soldiers, if required.
 	
    d. Coordinates welcome home activities for (theater) rear detachment personnel.
 	
    e. Maintains personnel assets visibility.
 	
3. S4 Section coordinates reception of rear detachment.
 	
    a. Coordinates transportation support for (theater) rear detachment personnel with ITO.
 	
    b. Verifies arrival schedule and processing requirements by coordinating with AACG.
 	
    c. Resolves inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with MTMC, USCS, and USDA officials.
 	
    d. Briefs commander and XO on status of rear detachment reception.
 	
4. S4 Section coordinates reception of equipment at SPOE.
 	
    a. Identifies transportation requirements by reviewing RSOP, redeployment movement order, and subordinate unit DELs.
 	
    b. Verifies rail and/or commercial transportation availability and schedules for containers and outsize, oversize, or overweight pieces of equipment by coordinating with the UMC.
 	
    c. Coordinates for convoy clearances with the UMC, as required.
 	
    d. Submits request(s) for required road march items to supporting supply activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinates subordinate units en route support requirements with UMC until all known requirements are fulfilled.		
f. Coordinates transportation support for battalion personnel to the SPOD with the UMC.		
g. Conducts movement status briefing(s) for the commander, staff, and subordinate commanders, as necessary.		
*5. IC-UMO coordinates SPOD MA activities.		
NOTE: Digitally equipped units will provide reports using FBCB2 or MCS, as appropriate.		
a. Monitors inventory, inspection, processing, and staging of vehicles and equipment for compliance with movement instructions, convoy clearances, and MTMC and PSA officials' instructions.		
b. Resolves vehicle and equipment inspection and processing deficiencies by coordinating with PSA, USCS, and USDA officials.		
c. Coordinates disposition of nonoperational vehicles with supporting installation personnel.		
d. Reports SPOD status by telephone or radio to S2/3 Section, as appropriate.		
e. Provides SP crossing report by telephone or radio to S2/3 Section, as appropriate.		
6. S4 Section monitors stand-down of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.		
a. Monitors inventory and maintenance status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons for compliance with maintenance SOP, appropriate publications, and commander's guidance.		
b. Provides vehicle and equipment technical inspection and excess equipment instructions to subordinate units.		
c. Monitors vehicle and equipment turn-in for compliance with appropriate publications and S4 instructions.		
d. Briefs commander and XO on status of vehicles, equipment, and weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
7. S2/3 Section drafts after-action report. a. Verifies staff and subordinate unit input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance. b. Prepares after-action report. c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification. d. Distributes after-action report IAW commander's guidance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Direct Integration Activities (63-1-4871) (<u>FM 100-17-3</u>, FM 100-17, FM 3-0,
FM 3-100.4, FM 55-65)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The unit is in the process of deploying following receipt of an OPORD. The unit has arrived at the POD, moved through the designated marshaling area/staging site, and has closed in the TAA. Prior to onward movement from the staging area, the unit verified that it met mission readiness criteria. The unit initiates command and control procedures with the gaining command. The unit security plan, unit access rosters, TSOP, and current maps are available. The unit is deploying as part of a higher echelon deployment. Integration activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel and equipment are combat ready and integrated into the operational mission of the gaining tactical force commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. Commander supervises integration activities.
 	
  a. Directs TOC to be established IAW TSOP.
 	
  b. Directs analog and/or digital communications link-up into gaining command net.
 	
  c. Directs unit HQ to integrate unit security plan into gaining command's operational force protection measure.
 	
  d. Directs unit HQ to integrate into the gaining command's CSS system.
 	
  e. Directs unit HQ to submit reports IAW gaining command SOPs/OPLANs.
 	
  f. Provides guidance to staff on corrective actions based on readiness reports from subordinate units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Releases consolidated battalion readiness report to higher HQ.		
h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
2. S2/3 Section completes operations integration actions.		
a. Enters tactical analog and/or digital communication nets.		
b. Establishes battalion TOC.		
c. Integrates unit into TAA security plan.		
d. Directs stationing of subordinate units within assigned area.		
e. Clarifies operational mission parameters with gaining command.		
f. Assists subordinate units in correcting readiness deficiencies.		
g. Submits required reports to gaining command.		
h. Conducts training as directed by gaining command.		
3. S1 Section performs personnel integration activities.		
a. Submits consolidated personnel status report to higher HQ.		
b. Monitors status of soldiers with a special status, such as sick or injured.		
c. Requests replacements, as needed.		
d. Coordinates medical, personnel, religious, morale, welfare and recreation, legal, and finance support.		
4. S4 Section performs logistics integration activities.		
a. Establishes direct support relationships with various support elements in the support structure to include supply, field services, automation maintenance, and maintenance.		
b. Provides subordinate units CSS support information, to include location of supply and maintenance points, field service support information, and procedures for resupply.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Submits logistics status report in format directed by gaining command.		
d. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
5. Communication personnel performs information technology integration activities for radio and tactical automation.		
a. Establishes direct support relationship with gaining command for COMSEC and system/software security materiel.		
b. Installs, operates, and maintains local area networks.		
c. Establishes and operates battalion NCS.		
d. Ensures analog and digital communications linkup with higher, adjacent, and supported commands.		
e. Selects signal sites and provides advice on interference problems.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Deployment in a Peacetime Environment (63-1-4872) (<u>FM 100-17,</u>
<u>FM 101-5, FM 55-65</u>)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The higher HQ is operating in a normal peacetime environment at a normal state of readiness. The unit has a wartime mission with a corresponding OPLAN on file. Unit is conducting operational mission and METL training. The unit MOBPLAN (RC), movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP, security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. The OPLAN calls for higher HQ subordinate units to deploy as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communications, automation systems, and courier. Peacetime deployment planning activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions, except NBC.

NOTE: MOBPLANs are required only for RC units. RC-specific task steps and performance measures are annotated "(RC)". This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: MOBPLAN (RC) and movement plan are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO GO**

*1. Commander directs deployment planning.
 	
     a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.
 	
     b. Directs S2/3 to update OPLAN.
 	
     c. Directs S2/3 to validate MOBPLAN (RC).
 	
     d. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans.
 	
     e. Directs security officer to update security plan.
 	
     f. Directs XO to update RSOP and TSOP.
 	
     g. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*2. XO coordinates staff planning.
 	
    a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
 	
    b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating movement/ deployment plans.
 	
    c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.
 	
    d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.
 	
    e. Coordinates update of RSOP and TSOP.
 	
    f. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.
 	
3. S2/3 Section analyzes mission.
 	
    a. Identifies specified and implied tasks in the OPLAN.
 	
    b. Identifies documented policies and procedures.
 	
    c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.
 	
    d. Coordinates with S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.
 	
    e. Coordinates with S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of missions.
 	
    f. Updates higher HQ OPLAN.
 	
    g. Maintains current maps and overlays for all missions for subordinate units.
 	
    h. Approves MOBPLANs (RC) for subordinate units.
 	
    i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
4. Staff Sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units.		
a. Provide personnel readiness review.		
b. Perform logistics readiness review.		
c. Perform OPSEC readiness review.		
d. Identify readiness issues.		
e. Provide recommendations to improve readiness.		
f. Update higher HQ RSOP and TSOP.		
g. Coordinate with supporting active duty readiness organization for support (RC).		
5. S2/3 Section validates MOBPLAN (RC).		
a. Verifies mission is current.		
b. Updates MOBPLAN.		
c. Confirms annex information is correct.		
d. Coordinates with S4 for review of logistics portions of plan.		
NOTE: MOBPLAN is updated annually or whenever a change occurs in unit mission or structure.		
6. S4 Section validates deployment plans.		
a. Maintains movement plans for all modes of transportation for the higher HQ.		
b. Validates equipment status.		
c. Validates AUEL for subordinate units.		
d. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate units and higher HQ movement plans.		
e. Verifies logistics annexes of MOBPLAN (RC).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

7. Staff officers supervise staff sections.
 	
    a. Direct sections to update RSOP, TSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLAN, and commander's guidance annually or whenever changes in unit mission or structure dictate.
 	
    b. Verify section input for annual commander's mobilization brief.
 	
    c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's brief, as required.
 	
    d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Supervise Operations Security Program (63-1-4038) (AR 530-1, AR 380-19,
                AR 380-19-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5)

     ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents have been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Threat may be in the form of conventional or unconventional forces and have the capability of intelligence gathering. OPSEC program is a passive defensive measure. The supporting rear operations element coordinates OPSEC activity throughout the rear area. Higher HQ OPSEC estimate is available. OPSEC teams identify OPSEC weakness and risks by examining unit and CP communications, signatures, tactical deployment patterns, and camouflage. This information with recommended countermeasures is disseminated to the battalion through the higher HQ or supported unit. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and all levels of threat forces attacks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPSEC program is planned and implemented IAW OPORD and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPSEC planning and implementation time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section plans OPSEC program for current operations.
 	
    a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing TSOP.
 	
    b. Lists enemy intelligence collection capabilities by extracting information from the higher HQ OPSEC estimates or annex.
 	
    c. Lists EEFI from higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex.
 	
    d. Lists indicators that affect or may compromise the EEFI.
 	
    e. Lists all countermeasure requirements by reviewing higher HQ OPSEC estimate or annex and the battalion's operations profile.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

f. Prepares battalion's OPSEC plan.
 	
NOTE: OPSEC plan should implement CP policies and procedures to overcome or neutralize the enemy's ability to collect information in the areas of communications, intelligence, logistics, and administrative actions.
 	
    g. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    h. Conducts continuous intelligence preparation of the battlefield.
 	
2. S2/3 and Commo Sections implement OPSEC plan.
 	
NOTE: This task step must be performed completely by the S2/3 Section when there is no S6 Section in the TO&E.
 	
    a. Enforce COMSEC measures to deny friendly information to the enemy by telecommunication means.
 	
    b. Enforce ELSEC measures to protect electromagnetic transmissions from enemy identification or location.
 	
    c. Enforce compromising emanations controls to render enemy detection devices ineffective.
 	
    d. Enforce ECCM to ensure the battalion's receipt and transmission of information, essential to mission accomplishment, is not disrupted.
 	
    e. Enforce information security measures to prevent compromise of classified and unclassified information.
 	
    f. Enforce physical security measures to prevent espionage, sabotage, or theft at command and control or support facilities.
 	
    g. Control usage of passwords for subordinate and attached units.
 	
    h. Install anti virus software on automation equipment for subordinate and attached units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

3. S2/3 and Commo Sections provide feedback on status of OPSEC program.
 	
NOTE: This task step must be performed completely by the S2/3 Section when there is no S6 Section in the TO&E.
 	
      a. Inspect subordinate units' positions for OPSEC effectiveness.
 	
      b. Inspect battalion's camouflage and concealment measures for compliance with TSOP, OPORD, and current tactical situation.
 	
      c. Identify OPSEC weakness and recommended corrections by continuously reviewing higher HQ OPSEC updates.
 	
      d. Coordinate additional support requirements with higher HQ or the supporting unit using analog and digital communications.
 	
      e. Provide feedback report to commander, staff, and subordinate elements on OPSEC effectiveness measures using analog and digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Supervise Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations (63-1-4040) (<u>FM 3-4,</u>
<u>FM 100-10, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-3, FM 3-5</u>)

| **ITERATION** | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion operations have commenced. Subordinate units have been deployed. The
commander and staff require updated NBC data for current operations and future planning. The battalion
HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with
all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the
commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/3 is required to provide command
and control of subordinate units during NBC intrusions. Isolated NBC incidents have occurred. Some
operational areas have reported contamination. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate
outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the
staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air,
NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in
MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Support is maintained at a level that allows the supported units to sustain
momentum of operations. NBC defense measures are conducted IAW NBC defense plan, TSOP, and
OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time required to implement NBC defense
operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section develops NBC defense plan.
 	
    a. Identifies established policies and procedures by reviewing NBC defense portion of the TSOP.
 	
    b. Identifies NBC threat and recommended countermeasures by analyzing the higher HQ vulnerability analysis and assessment.
 	
    c. Prepares an NBC defense requirement forecast.
 	
    d. Coordinates medical mass casualty evacuation and treatment support with the S1 Section and supporting medical element.
 	
    e. Coordinates alternate methods of conducting support mission with the S2/3 Section.
 	
    f. Coordinates alternate lines of communications with S6 or communications personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates additional and augmented decontamination support with higher HQ staff element using analog and digital communications.		
h. Develops NBC defense item consumption plan for increased demand.		
i. Develops personnel, equipment, and facilities decontamination plan.		
j. Disseminates NBC defense plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.		
k. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
2. S2/3 Section directs preparation for NBC defense.		
a. Identifies backup command and control procedures.		
b. Alerts all NBC defense teams and subordinate companies of impending or actual attack.		
c. Maintains NBC analog/digital situation map(s) to include potential enemy NBC targets, decontamination site overlays, and predicted contamination overlay.		
d. Directs periodic monitoring by subordinate units of their assigned areas.		
e. Directs appropriate MOPP level.		
f. Directs preparation for receiving NBC decontamination augmentations.		
g. Directs redeployment of units and facilities.		
h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
3. S2/3 Section directs response to initial effects of NBC attack.		
a. Revises MOPP level as necessary.		
b. Alerts higher, lower, adjacent units of imminent attack using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Reestablishes chains of command and communication, as required.		
d. Assesses damage to equipment and facilities by analyzing reports from subordinate units.		
e. Coordinates assistance for subordinate units with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.		
f. Alerts MA and EPW collection points and aid stations of NBC hazards.		
g. Forwards NBC 1 and subsequent NBC 1 reports to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.		
h. Computes yield and ground zero location.		
i. Prepares downwind hazard prediction.		
j. Prepares simplified fallout prediction.		
k. Forwards NBC 6 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate, using analog and/or digital communications.		
l. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff.		
m. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
4. S2/3 Section directs response to residual effects of NBC attack.		
a. Plots NBC 4 report on situation map.		
b. Forwards NBC 4 report to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element.		
c. Maintains radiation exposure status.		
d. Prepares analog/digital contamination overlay(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Predicts contamination duration period.		
f. Plots NBC 3 report on analog/digital situation map.		
g. Briefs NBC implications to commander and staff.		
h. Lists restoration decontamination requirements.		
i. Recommends survey requirements to S2/3 and HQ NBC element.		
j. Coordinates for replacement of chemical personnel and mass casualty handling procedures with the S1 Section.		
k. Coordinates clearing of obstacles and the use of chemical weapons in denial operations with the supporting engineer and the supporting rear operations elements.		
l. Directs revised MOPP level as required.		
m. Coordinates acquisition, storage, and issue of NBC equipment and supplies with the S4 Section.		
n. Updates NBC defense contingency plan.		
o. Provides current status of augmented chemical unit employment, protective measures, and MOPP and OEG implementation to the HQ staff.		
p. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
5. S2/3 Section directs preparation for a friendly NBC strike.		
a. Identifies specific actions by analyzing STRIKEWARN message.		
b. Provides current situation briefing to commander.		
c. Directs subordinate units to implement NBC defense protective measures using analog and/or digital communications.		
d. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

6. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical surveys.
 	
   a. Selects survey techniques.
 	
   b. Tasks units to provide team(s).
 	
   c. Formulates turnback dose and dose rates.
 	
   d. Prepares overlays and/or strip maps to destination point(s).
 	
   e. Briefs survey team(s) on current situation and information requirements.
 	
   f. Recommends COA to S2/3 after analyzing survey team(s) data.
 	
   g. Lists decontamination requirements.
 	
   h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
7. S2/3 Section directs radiological and chemical decontamination.
 	
   a. Identifies degree and extent of hazard(s).
 	
   b. Establishes an acceptable level of decontamination IAW commander's guidance.
 	
   c. Directs MOPP gear exchange.
 	
   d. Identifies areas and facilities for sustainment decontamination.
 	
   e. Supervises marking of contaminated runoff areas.
 	
   f. Updates battalion and subordinate units' radiation status.
 	
   g. Requests replenishment of NBC decontamination equipment and supplies from S4 Section.
 	
   h. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

8. S2/3 Section coordinates hasty decontamination.
 	
    a. Directs before-operations PMCS on vehicles and equipment.
 	
    b. Identifies contaminated locations and routes to be taken.
 	
    c. Coordinates set up assistance with subordinate units and site supervisor.
 	
    d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and digital communications.
 	
    e. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.
 	
9. S2/3 Section coordinates for detailed equipment and personnel decontamination.
 	
    a. Coordinates with higher and lower units using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    b. Coordinates additional support with higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element.
 	
    c. Coordinates with S2/3 Section for decontamination priorities of service support facilities.
 	
    d. Directs NBC augmentations to designated area.
 	
    e. Monitors decontamination operations to ensure priority guidance is being followed.
 	
    f. Provides decontamination status updates to the commander and supporting rear operations element.
 	
    g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Command Religious Support Program (63-1-4044) (FM 16-1)

    ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Requests for religious support have been received. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Support operations have commenced. Casualties have occurred. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command and soldier religious support needs are met IAW the TSOP, OPORD, and command directives. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of religious support activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Unit Ministry Team develops a religious support plan.
 	
    a. Lists the religious needs of the battalion based on commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Establishes religious support priorities.
 	
    c. Coordinates direct and general religious support with higher HQ ministry activity.
 	
    d. Provides staff sections with required input for plans and orders.
 	
    e. Consolidates input to the religious support plan from other staff sections.
 	
    f. Prepares the battalion religious support plan.
 	
    g. Disseminates plan to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. Unit Ministry Team provides religious support, to include rites and services.
 	
    a. Monitors casualty data to determine required religious services.
 	
    b. Provides worship services, memorial ceremonies, services for the dead, sacraments, rites, and ordinances.
 	
    c. Conducts mass or emergency burials IAW current regulations and directives.
 	
    d. Provides support to battalion headquarters personnel.
 	
    e. Requests supplies and additional transportation requirements from S4 Section.
 	
3. Unit Ministry Team provides pastoral care to soldiers.
 	
    a. Provides pastoral care that counters battlefield shock and trauma.
 	
    b. Conducts pastoral counseling that lessens stress and enhance morale.
 	
    c. Provides religious support for battle fatigue cases.
 	
    d. Conducts specialized counseling that enhances morale.
 	
    e. Provides routine pastoral care and counseling to all battalion soldiers.
 	
    f. Conducts pastoral care to casualties at battle site(s).
 	
*4. Chaplain advises the commander on unit morale, moral climate, and religious welfare.
 	
    a. Provides information on morale and moral climate of the battalion that has been personally verified.
 	
    b. Briefs commander on moral and humanitarian aspects of policies and procedures.
 	
    c. Notifies commander immediately of policies perceived as unjust by soldiers.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Notifies commander of disruptive and potential disruptive social patterns.		
e. Notifies commander of possible violations of the laws of war.		
f. Advises commander on policies or procedures affecting soldier rights to the free exercise of religion.		
*5. Chaplain advises the commander on ethical issues.		
a. Advises the commander on specific methods of improving the ethical climate within the battalion.		
b. Briefs commander on ethical aspects of policies and leadership.		
c. Briefs the commander on soldier training in ethical and moral decision making.		
d. Emphasizes value of human life, justice, dignity, and truth through sermons, pastoral counseling, and ethical or moral instruction.		
e. Performs duties as ethical advocate to the commander in the prevention of dehumanizing treatment of friendly troops, EPW and civilians, the violation of codes of morality, illegal acts, desecration of sacred places, and disrespect for human life.		
6. Unit Ministry Team provides information on indigenous religions.		
a. Advises the commander of the impact of indigenous religion(s) in the battalion's mission.		
b. Advises the commander in developing friendly relations with local religious bodies and civilians.		
c. Identifies human welfare needs caused by combat on indigenous population.		
d. Coordinates alleviation of human welfare needs with HN military and civilian religious institutions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section
Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
Highway Traffic Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures (63-1-4303) (<u>FM 22-51,</u> AR 385-10, FM 100-14, FM 3-4, FM 6-22.5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Operations have commenced and are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for staff personnel. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has directed that battlefield stress management procedures be implemented. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion applies techniques that counter degradation of morale, training, and physical condition of battalion staff personnel in performance of the mission. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase implementation time of stress prevention measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. Commanders and leaders perform stress prevention actions.
 	
    a. Issue warning orders, OPORDs and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level using analog and/or digital communications or BFACS.
 	
    b. Provide entire staff an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.
 	
    c. Brief commander's intentions to all battalion staff personnel.
 	
    d. Speak positively concerning the battalion's missions, purpose, and abilities.
 	
    e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the battalion staff.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Employ an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.		
g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.		
*2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan.		
a. Coordinate with HQ company for a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.		
b. Develop sleep plan.		
c. Adjust sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation.		
*3. Staff element leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.		
a. Cross-train staff personnel on all critical tasks.		
b. Develop a plan for rotation of staff personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.		
c. Assign two staff members to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.		
d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.		
*4. Staff element leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques.		
a. Integrate new members into the staff elements immediately.		
b. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among staff members and leaders.		
c. Provide instruction on relaxation techniques to all staff personnel.		
d. Conduct routine after-action stress briefings.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*5. Commander and leaders implement treatment techniques.
 	
     a. Develop a plan to deal with mild, seriously-stressed, or BF cases.
 	
     b. Assign staff members who show signs of stress or BF to simple tasks.
 	
     c. Direct staff members to be supportive of BF or stressed personnel.
 	
     d. Direct movement of staff members showing no signs of improvement to supporting medical facilities.
 	
     e. Refer for medical evaluation those staff members showing signs of serious stress or BF.
 	
     f. Reintegrate RTD staff members into their specific element or section.
 	
6. Staff personnel employ stress prevention measures.
 	
     a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.
 	
     b. Comply with the commander's sleep plan.
 	
     c. Identify signs of stress or BF in other staff members.
 	
     d. Provide immediate buddy aid support.
 	
     e. Report signs of stress or BF of other staff members to immediate supervisor.
 	
     f. Accept new unit members immediately.
 	
     g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.
 	
     h. Participate in buddy system and after-action stress debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section
Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
Highway Traffic Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (63-1-4326) (FM 100-14, AR 385-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-3, FM 3-4)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | | | | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: Safety hazards for personnel and equipment exist. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital/analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The unit is deployed in a tactical environment supporting combat operations. Hazards increase as operations intensify. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All potential safety problems for tasks are identified and either reduced or eliminated. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase risk management implementation times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. Commander and leaders identify risk or safety hazards.
 	
    a. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPLAN/OPORD or FRAGO.
 	
    b. Identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks.
 	
    c. Integrate safety into every phase of the planning process.
 	
    d. Identify the benefits of safety measures to the unit's mission versus the potential cost of risk or safety hazards.
 	
    e. Conduct continuous assessment of phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*2. Commander and leaders evaluate risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
 	
      a. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and their corrective actions.
 	
      b. Identify all unwarranted risks.
 	
      c. Compare identified risk to the commander's acceptable risk level based on stated training objectives.
 	
      d. Calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records.
 	
      e. Describe operations in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low).
 	
      f. Prepare COA that reduces risk.
 	
*3. Commander and leaders eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
 	
      a. Select COA that maximizes the operation and reduces the risk.
 	
      b. Develop procedures that reduce risk.
 	
      c. Provide guidance that enhances safety in all phases of operation.
 	
      d. Prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhances safety and reduces risks.
 	
4. Unit personnel employ safety procedures.
 	
      a. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations.
 	
      b. Correct unsafe acts on the spot.
 	
      c. Report all risk and safety violations to commander and the battalion safety officer using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Highway Traffic Section
S2/3 Section

TASK: Process Road Clearance Requests (55-1-0040) (FM 55-10, FM 55-30)

   ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Corps units are being deployed to support tactical operations. The unit needs to move on controlled routes that require a movement credit. The unit must request and receive clearance before beginning move. The request must be submitted through the MCT within the area the movement originates. The MCT forwards the request to its servicing highway traffic section. The MCB highway traffic section reviews the request and considers it based on command priorities for the type of movement and the unit requiring the movement. The battalion SOPs, OPLAN, or OPORD are available. Some iterations of training on this task are performed in MOPP 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Convoy clearance request and overweight/oversize special hauling permits (movement bid) are processed IAW MCB SOP, OPLAN, or OPORD. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase operation time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. The movement/circulation control officer reviews highway movement and oversize/overweight special hauling permit request forms (movement bid).
 	
    a. Reviews requests for accuracy and completeness.
 	
    b. Provides instructions for rerouting or diverting based upon the condition of MSRs, enemy activity, or congestion.
 	
    c. Coordinates with MP and host nation as required.
 	
NOTE: If MTP is conducted in CONUS location, CMCB will determine if state authorities require notification.
 	
    d. Issues movement credits for approved movements and return to the requesting unit through the MCT.
 	
    e. Provides information on all movement credits issued to the PM, MP units, and MRTs for traffic control.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. Senior movement/circulation NCO's validates convoy clearance request and special hauling permit (STP 55-88N24-SM-TG: 551-722-3424).
 	
        a. Reviews requested routes for highway, bridge, tunnel, or tactical restrictions or limitations.
 	
        b. Identifies whether the route is for movement over controlled route.
 	
        c. Coordinates with host nation and military police for movement through their corresponding areas of responsibilities.
 	
        d. Processes request through movement control units to destination for through clearance.
 	
        e. Assigns movement authorization number to the requirement (movement credit).
 	
        f. Notifies state, host nation, and military movement control officials of movement authorization.
 	
        g. Issues the authorization to requesting unit (convoy clearance number or movement credit) to requesting unit.
 	
        h. Assigns a movement authorization number to the requirement (movement credit).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/3 Section
Plans, Programs, and Operations Section
Highway Traffic Section

TASK: Develop Movement Program (55-1-0041) (FM 55-10, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 55-15)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The XO assigns preparation responsibilities for the development of the movement program to the S2/3. The S2/3 issues a warning notice to the program officer to develop a movement program plan that pre-plans both known and anticipated transportation requirements for reception, onward movement, and sustainment. Intelligence and engineering data about the area of operation is available. All subordinate units are available. The task should not be done in MOPP 4. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Develop a movement program plan IAW FM 55-15 and FM 55-10 that supports the battalion commander's concept of operations. Movement program is completed within the time established by the battalion XO.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. The program officer develops movement program.		
a. Assesses the distribution plan.		
b. Determines requirements.		
c. Determines transportation capabilities.		
d. Balances the requirements against the capabilities.		
e. Determines shortfalls, critical points, and recommended solutions for handling the shortfalls.		
f. Coordinates movement program.		
g. Publishes and distributes the program.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. Senior Movement NCO assists in the development of the movement program (STP 55-88N24-SM-TG: 551-722-4402).
 	
    a. Determines what must be moved.
 	
    b. Determines what transportation resources are available.
 	
    c. Balances the requirements against the resources.
 	
    d. Determines shortfalls and critical points and recommends priorities.
 	
    e. Coordinates the plan with all affected personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Highway Traffic Section
S2/3 Section

TASK: Develop a Highway Regulation Plan (55-1-0047) (<u>FM 55-10</u>, FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-19.4, FM 5-170, FM 55-15)

    ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion XO has issued the battalion commander's guidance and restated mission to the S3. The highway traffic section must develop a highway regulation plan to sustain movements IAW the Corps commander's priorities. Telephone, fax, digital, radio, and courier communications are available. Iterations of training on this task can be performed in various levels of MOPP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Develop a highway regulation plan that will provide the most effective and efficient use of road networks IAW commander's concept of operations. At various levels of MOPP, performance degradation factors increase time for performing task steps.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Circulation Control Officer/MCO assembles critical information and conducts a mission analysis to develop a highway regulation plan to sustain movements in keeping with the Corps commander's priorities (STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-329-1019; STP 55-88II-MQS: 01-7320.75-0535, STP 55-88N24-SM-TG: 551-722-3406).
 	
    a. Reviews and analyzes operations plans, orders, and estimates to understand the concept of operations to effectively support the commander's intent while executing highway regulation.
 	
    b. Reviews engineer and intelligence plans or estimates and extracts detailed information on road network characteristics.
 	
    c. Reviews planned requirements contained in the movement program, the OPLAN, OPORD, or FRAGO to anticipate volumes of traffic on route segments during specific times.
 	
    d. Determines the terminal and facility location based on the access to the MSR's and capacities to receive, load, unload, and stage equipment and cargo.
 	
    e. Identifies road network and recommends primary and alternate MSR's to the G3/G4.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. The circulation control officer/NCO receives approved MSR's and ASR's from the G3 and develops the highway regulation plan.
 	
    a. Coordinates with HN for laws and regulations that govern the main supply routes and roadways in the AOR.
 	
    b. Avoids using numbers and names each MSR.
 	
    c. Identifies critical points that may affect traffic flow.
 	
    d. Establishes and determines checkpoints to segment each MSR.
 	
    e. Establishes control measures on each route.
 	
    f. Determines reporting requirements for units using MSR.
 	
    g. Staffs and coordinates the plan.
 	
3. The circulation NCO/movement supervisor supervises personnel creating transportation route overlays and traffic circulation plans (STP 55-88N24-SM-TG: 551-722-4409; STP 21-24-SMCT: 071-332-5000; STP 55-88N1-SM: 551-722-1409).
 	
    a. Receives and reviews highway regulation plan.
 	
    b. Prepares overlay techniques outlined IAW FM 101-5-1.
 	
    c. Identifies the placement of control operations to include traffic control points at critical points on the MSR.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Highway Traffic Section
      S2/3 Section
      Plans, Programs, and Operations Section

TASK: Establish Movement Control Operations (55-1-0049) (FM 55-10)

   ITERATION   1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion commander has provided planning guidance and restated mission to the S3 for establishing movement control procedures for the area of operation. The PPO Section and HTS works under the supervision of the S3. The S3 has tasked the PPO Section and HTS to review higher HQ planning guidance and restated mission in order to support the MCB designated area of operations. Telephone, fax, digital, radio, and courier communications are available. Iterations of this task may be performed in various levels of MOPP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Establishes communication with external and internal elements to establish movement control operations IAW commander's planning guidance and restated mission. At MOPP, performance degradation factors increase time for performing task steps.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Plans, Programs, and Operations Section conducts a mission analysis to establish guidance to support the commander's intent for coordinating support and maintaining the status of transportation activities throughout the Corps rear area.
 	
  a. Develops and implements the Corps movement program based on movement requirements submitted by Corps major subordinate commands and the COSCOM.
 	
  b. Coordinates and monitors the status of inbound and outbound movements from the Corps rear area.
 	
  c. Plans support for reception and onward movement.
 	
  d. Plans transportation according to priorities established by the Corps G3/G4 in coordination with the COSCOM Deputy Commander for support operations.
 	
  e. Provides planners to assist the CTO during the initial planning phase.
 	
  f. Establishes procedures to program and commit transportation assets to meet movement requirements according to Corps priorities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Coordinates transportation support and maintains status of transportation activities throughout the Corps.		
h. Recommends reallocation or relocation of transportation units or assets to meet exceptional movement requirements.		
i. Maintains liaison with theater, joint, combined, and adjacent Corps movement control activities.		
j. Develops a program to maintain ITV of shipments and diverts, reconsigns, or holds cargo in transit.		
k. Develops a program to reports the status and location of containers to maintain ITV.		
2. Highway Traffic Section conducts a mission analysis to establish guidance for coordinating movement originating in the Corps area, which terminates outside the Corps with the MCA, other MCB HTS, DTOs, and HN.		
a. Provides highway regulation planning assistance to the Corps G4 and CTO to designate MSRs and establishes control measures to support the concept of operations.		
b. Develops highway regulation.		
c. Coordinates unit movement requirements with Corps G3.		
d. Provides transportation route overlays and traffic circulation plans to support Corps.		
e. Coordinates with the Corps G2, G3, engineer, PM, and MPs for route classification and selection.		
f. Coordinates placement of MRTs.		
g. Collects, processes, and distributes information on MSR status.		
h. Plans, routes, schedules, and manages traffic according to command priorities.		
i. Issues movement credits for approved movements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Provides instruction for diversion or rerouting based upon the conditions of MSRs, enemy activity, or congestion. k. Coordinates large unit movement tables with other movements and maneuvers. l. Coordinates enforcement or highway regulation plan with the PM, MP brigade, and HN.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/3 Section
Battalion Headquarters

TASK: Provide Command and Control of Movement Control Battalion (55-1-0051) (FM 55-10)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The higher HQ OPORD/OPLAN with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents are available. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Members of the Command Section may become casualties, but there shall be no serious detriment to the Command Section's mission performance. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Telephone, fax, digital, radio, and courier communication is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed at MOPP4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command Section commands and controls all subordinate unit activities IAW plans, established policies and directives, and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of decision making procedures and activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. XO supervises staff activities.
 	
    a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.
 	
    b. Formulates staff operating policies.
 	
    c. Supervises maintenance of master policy files.
 	
    d. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.
 	
    e. Coordinates assigned mission with MCT commanders using analog and digital communications.
 	
    f. Supervises the operations of the LOC.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. Command Section exchanges information.
 	
        a. Transforms pertinent information into usable data for decision making.
 	
        b. Coordinates information exchange with battalion, higher HQ, adjacent HQ, and MCT's.
 	
        c. Conducts operational briefings as necessary.
 	
3. Command Section provides technical expertise.
 	
        a. Provides planning assistance to any supported units, if requested.
 	
        b. Provides assistance in planning contingency operations, when required.
 	
4. Command Section maintains policy files.
 	
        a. Maintains current policy files by tabbing and indexing.
 	
        b. Maintains current staff journals.
 	
        c. Maintains current section's workbook files.
 	
        d. Maintains current section situation maps and overlays using analog and digital communications.
 	
5. Command Section reacts to loss of key personnel.
 	
        a. Realigns staff based on line of succession or commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Maintains continuity of operations.
 	
        c. Forwards casualty reports to higher HQ S1 Section using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

6. S3 supervises activities of MCTs.
 	
    a. Directs, redirects, cross-levels, or masses logistics and CHS resources within area of responsibility based on guidance from higher HQ and METT-TC.
 	
    b. Monitors performance of MCTs to ensure required level of efficiency as prescribed in plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP, is maintained.
 	
    c. Monitors support plans to determine overall effectiveness.
 	
    d. Assigns specific tasks to MCTs.
 	
    e. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine compliance by MCTs.
 	
    f. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the OPORD and annexes using analog land digital communications.
 	
    g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/S3 Section
S4 Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Receive the Mission (63-1-4000) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, FM 100-10, FM 100-16, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-3)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The headquarters receives a warning order with notification of an upcoming operation. The warning order contains the type, time, and location(s) of operation. Upon notification of the mission, the commander briefs the XO. The XO alerts principal and special staff officers to prepare for pending planning process. Unit TSOPs, including higher supported, and lower commands are available. Liaison officers are briefed for specific supported command.   Some iterations of this tasks should be performed in MOPP4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Issue initial guidance, to include the level of detail to which the staff can plan, initial time allocation, disposition of Liaison Officers, authorized movements, and additional tasks the commander wants the staff to accomplish. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase completion times for mission receipt phase.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO GO**

1. The Commander and staff conduct initial assessment of the mission.
 	
NOTE: The new mission may come from an order issued by higher headquarters, WARNO, FRAGO, or be derived from an ongoing operation.
 	
    a. Calculate probable time from mission receipt to mission execution.
 	
    b. Calculate the time needed to plan, prepare for, and execute the mission.
 	
    c. Identify the scope for the IPB.
 	
    d. Identify staff estimates already available to assist planning.
 	
    e. Determine whether to conduct the full MDMP or to abbreviate the process.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

f. Make an assessment of the staff's experience, cohesiveness, and level rest or stress.
 	
    g. Identify weather and light requirements necessary for planning, rehearsals, and movement.
 	
2. S2/3 Officer issues initial warning order to subordinate units.
 	
    a. Describes the type of operation.
 	
    b. Provides general location(s) of operation.
 	
    c. Establishes the initial time line for planning.
 	
    d. Identifies subordinate elements movement requirements.
 	
    e. Coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel, as directed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section

TASK: Conduct Mission Analysis (63-1-4001.55-0001) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, AR 530-1, FM 100-14, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-4)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: The mission is to provide battalion level staff functions to elements assigned or attached to the battalion headquarters. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Upon receipt of the new mission, the commander briefs the XO. The XO assembles principal staff members in preparation for mission analysis. Current personnel, supplies, and equipment status reports for all subordinate elements are available. Mission analysis is dynamic and continuous; therefore, it is subject to change at anytime based upon new information, changing situations, and change of commander's guidance. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Mission analysis results in the development of a plan that supports the higher HQ commander's intent and concept of operations. Mission analysis is completed within the time established by the XO. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase mission analysis completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO GO**

*1. XO supervises staff mission analysis.
 	
    a. Organizes staff to conduct mission analysis.
 	
    b. Translates major specified and implied tasks to specific objectives based on intent of next two higher command echelons.
 	
    c. Provides mission analysis guidance to staff based on the commander's guidance.
 	
    d. Inspects results of staff mission analysis for compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
    e. Identifies time and place for staff's mission analysis briefing to commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*2. Staff Officers conduct preliminary staff mission analysis.
 	
     a. Provide information update(s) to commander on areas that are critical to mission accomplishment.
 	
     b. Identify mission and intent of commanders of the next two higher HQ.
 	
     c. Exchange pertinent information that is relevant to new mission with other staff sections.
 	
     d. Identify tentative force structure and size to be attached or assigned.
 	
     e. Record specified tasks in higher HQ and supported unit's OPLANs.
 	
     f. Identify all implied tasks that must be accomplished to perform the overall mission or specified tasks.
 	
*3. S3 Officer provides input for development of higher HQ OPLAN.
 	
     a. Provides information briefing to higher HQ staff element, which includes projected locations of tentative assigned, or attached elements, projected requirements, logistics and combat health support plans, and special operations.
 	
     b. Provides current status of assets and task organization to higher HQ.
 	
*4. Staff Officers finalize staff mission analysis.
 	
     a. Select essential tasks that are necessary to accomplish overall mission based on higher HQ commander's intent.
 	
     b. List all constraints and restrictions on actions and activities.
 	
     c. List all information relating to the NBC threats on the battlefield.
 	
     d. Prepare preliminary mission statement.
 	
     e. Brief staff mission analysis results to commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*5. Commander completes mission analysis.
 	
     a. Restates mission in clear, concise statements of tasks in the order they are to be accomplished.
 	
     b. Provides acceptable levels of risk for mission accomplishment.
 	
     c. Provides guidance on the parameters for conducting analysis in specific areas.
 	
     d. States specific COA to be or not to be pursued by the staff.
 	
     e. Directs S2/3 to issue warning notice to all subordinate units informing them of pending operations.
 	
*6. XO and S2/3 perform a time analysis.
 	
     a. Calculate total time remaining before execution of upcoming operations.
 	
     b. Identify all steps in the command estimate process.
 	
     c. Assign time limitations for each step in the command estimate process that does not exceed one-third of the total time remaining before execution.
 	
     d. Disseminate time limitations to all staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (63-1-4002) (FM 34-130, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 3-4, FM 34-1)

     ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander approves the staff's mission analysis and issues his restated mission and planning guidance. The S2/S3 issues a warning notice to subordinate units and initiates the IPB process. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Higher HQ battlefield area evaluations are available and portions are transcribed to the battalion's analysis of the AO. Other information, such as engineer's terrain studies, operational weather forecast, the provost marshal's analysis of route reconnaissance, and civil military conditions are available. The S2/S3 has been assigned the responsibility of initiating, coordinating, ensuring completion, and disseminating the analysis of the AO. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog, digital, automation, and courier communications systems. SCPE is on hand or field expedient and natural shelters are available, whichever applies. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Facts and assumptions are identified about the battlefield environment and the threat that provide focus for the intelligence collection effort, enable staff planning, and development of friendly COA. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase IPB completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices.
 	
    a. Identifies the amount of detail required within time available.
 	
    b. Identifies gaps in current intelligence using CCIR and commander's intent to set priorities.
 	
    c. Identifies initial collection requirements.
 	
    d. Assembles materials and information required to conduct IPB.
 	
    e. Forwards pertinent information to other staff sections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section defines the battlefield environment.		
a. Identifies the limits of the AO.		
b. Identifies the limits of the area of interest.		
c. Coordinates input on the battlefield environment with other staff sections.		
d. Identifies significant characteristics of the battlefield environment that affect the specific area of responsibility in coordination with each staff section.		
e. Identifies those characteristics of the battlefield that require in-depth evaluation.		
3. S2/S3 Section evaluates the battlefield's effects upon COA.		
a. Identifies effects of terrain on the battalion's operations.		
b. Identifies the effects of weather upon battalion's operations.		
c. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics upon battalion's operations.		
d. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on friendly COA.		
e. Identifies the effects of terrain on threat COA.		
f. Identifies the effects of weather on threat COA.		
g. Identifies effects of logistics infrastructure, demographics, economics, and political characteristics on threat COA.		
h. Lists the combined effects of the battlefield environment on threat COA.		
i. Develops population status overlay, weather analysis matrix, and other overlays, as required, using digital and analog means of intelligence gathering.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

4. S2/S3 Section evaluates the threat.
 	
    a. Conducts a threat order of battle analysis for each type of conventional or unconventional units that might be faced.
 	
    b. Develops a threat COA model.
 	
5. S2/S3 Section determines threat COA.
 	
    a. Identifies all rational COA available to the threat.
 	
    b. Prioritizes each available COA.
 	
    c. Develops a comprehensive, detailed set of threat COA.
 	
    d. Prepares situation templates for each COA available to the threat.
 	
    e. Prepares event template.
 	
    f. Prepares decision support template for rear CP.
 	
6. S2/S3 Section prepares analysis of the AO.
 	
    a. Consolidates the IPB data into appropriate format.
 	
    b. Forwards draft Analysis of the AO to S2/S3 for review and approval.
 	
    c. Makes appropriate changes as instructed by the S2/S3 and XO.
 	
    d. Forwards corrected analysis of the AO to the S2/S3 for signature.
 	
    e. Distributes analysis of AO, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Formulate Feasible Courses of Action (63-1-4003) (FM 101-5, AR 530-1, FM 100-14, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 34-130)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion's analysis of the AO is completed. Higher HQ analysis of the AO are available. Higher HQ COAs are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded. Unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Staff Sections gather all pertinent information needed for their estimates. During this process, the S2/S3 Section finalizes the IPB. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Feasible COA statements and sketches support the commander's restated mission and formulate parameters for staff estimates. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase feasible COA completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section performs rear area threat evaluation using analog and/or digital devices.
 	
        a. Coordinates with supporting rear operations elements for all current threat information affecting the new AO.
 	
        b. Identifies threat forces expected to be found in the area of interest.
 	
        c. Lists all known threat force dispositions, composition, and strength.
 	
        d. Lists all recent threat activities in the area of interest and influence.
 	
        e. Develops applicable doctrinal templates for threat forces within the area of interest.
 	
        f. Prepares an unconventional warfare situation map that shows probable operating areas, encampments, and movement routes for unconventional threat forces.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Prepares a population status overlay that shows areas with a high potential for civil unrest and/or concentrations of enemy sympathizers.		
h. Requests intelligence information required to fill gaps identified in the data base from the higher HQ staff element.		
2. S2/S3 Section performs threat integration.		
a. Prepares a situation template showing unit and equipment dispositions, frontages, depths, and echelon spacing adjusted for terrain and weather factors.		
b. Prepares an event template showing NAI along high-speed avenues of approach into the support area.		
c. Prepares a decision support template showing points where a decision is required based on threat action and rate of movement.		
d. Lists threat's most likely COA in their probable order of adoption.		
e. Coordinates threat integration products with higher HQ staff element.		
3. S2/S3 Section arrays friendly force, battalion HQ, and its subordinate units.		
a. Identifies maneuver forces and their availability in the area of interest.		
b. Identifies all supporting CSS units in the area of interest.		
c. Prepares analog/digital map overlay showing array of friendly units based on mission requirements and guidance from the commander.		
*4. S2/S3 selects feasible COA.		
a. Identifies specific guidance from the higher HQ OPLAN.		
b. Lists schemes of support that sustains supported units in area of responsibility.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Identifies tentative arrangements for command, control, and communications.
 	
    d. Assigns tentative missions consistent with a specific subordinate element's capability.
 	
    e. Lists a minimum of two feasible COA.
 	
    f. Briefs commander and XO on the selected COA for approval or revision.
 	
    g. Disseminates approved feasible COA to all other staff sections using appropriate Battlefield Functional Area Command and Control system.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Intelligence Estimate (63-1-4004) (<u>FM 34-130</u>, FM 101-5, FM 3-4,
FM 34-54)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT				T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitation for estimates. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available and are used for transcribing information to the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications, and courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Intelligence estimate is prepared within the time prescribed in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Army Regulation (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase intelligence estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section determines specific information requirements using analog and/or digital devices.
 	
     a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission and the analysis of the AO.
 	
     b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements for obtaining information from the TSOP.
 	
     c. Identifies PIR/IR gaps.
 	
     d. Prepares listing of indicators for each PIR/IR.
 	
 NOTE: List addresses applicable PIR/IR received from higher HQ, threat infiltration activities, possible targets for threat activities, and probable type and size force the threat may use against these targets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Prepares intelligence collection work sheet that lists all PIR/IR, NAI, indicators, and available collection agencies.		
f. Requests additional intelligence, based on PIR/IR and current holdings, from collection agencies listed in collection work sheet.		
2. S2/S3 Section assembles required intelligence information.		
a. Extracts required information from current intelligence holdings, such as the S2 workbook, ASAS, situation maps, policy files and journals, and INTSUM.		
b. Revises intelligence collection work sheets to reflect changes in collection requirements.		
c. Identifies pertinence of all incoming information in terms of reliability and credibility factors.		
d. Integrates incoming information into existing files and work sheets.		
3. S2/S3 Section develops reference and paragraph 1, Mission.		
a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.		
b. Transcribes commander's restated mission.		
4. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 2, Situation and Considerations.		
a. Lists weather report, climatic information, and light data with moon phase.		
b. Lists the weather effects on visibility, traffic ability, personnel, equipment, threat capabilities, and friendly COA.		
c. Lists the terrain effects on the ability of a force to obtain long and short range observation and direct fire.		
d. Lists the terrain effects on the terminal impact of direct weapons.		
e. Lists the terrain effects on concealment from ground and air observations, and cover from direct and indirect fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Lists threat avenues of approach.		
g. Identifies probable size and type threat force that could traverse the avenues of approach.		
h. Identifies terrain factors effecting placement of the battalion and subordinate units.		
i. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on threat capabilities and COA.		
j. Summarizes overall effects of terrain on battalion's mission and COA.		
5. S2/S3 Section develops Enemy Forces portion of paragraph 2.		
a. Lists all map overlays and previously published documents that show threat situation and positions.		
b. Lists all threat units by unit designation with organizational structure.		
c. Summarizes current threat activities that might serve as indicators to future actions.		
d. Lists threat deviations from known doctrine, practices, and principles of war and known personnel and equipment weaknesses.		
e. Lists civilian populace attitudes toward friendly and threat forces as they relate to hindrance or accomplishment of the battalion's mission.		
6. S2/S3 Section develops Friendly Forces portion of paragraph 2.		
a. Lists the basic maneuver capabilities to include what, when, where, and in what strength, for each capability.		
b. Lists conclusions on threat capabilities and probability of adoption of a COA, including rationale.		
c. Lists limitations that could make the accomplishment of the battalion's mission highly doubtful or impossible.		
d. List indicators for possible use of air and NBC weapons and DE devices.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

7. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 3, Analysis.
 	
    a. Analyzes each COA using key considerations.
 	
    b. Determines advantages and disadvantages of each COA.
 	
*8. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 4, Comparison.
 	
    a. Compares COAs using key considerations.
 	
    b. Ranks COAs for each key consideration.
 	
    c. Uses a decision matrix to compare COAs.
 	
9. S2/S3 Section develops paragraph 5, Recommendations and Conclusions.
 	
    a. Recommends COA based on the comparison.
 	
    b. Issues deficiencies and risks with recommendation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S1 Section

TASK: Develop Personnel Estimate (63-1-4005) (<u>FM 12-6</u>, FM 100-10, FM 101-5)

ITERATION		1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT			T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the battalion intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitation for estimates. S1 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. The personnel estimate is distributed to the battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Personnel estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Regulations. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase personnel estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S1 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices.
 	
        a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analyses of the AO, and higher HQ personnel summaries.
 	
        b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP.
 	
        c. Identifies agencies where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S1 Section assembles required information.
 	
    a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with the S2/S3 Section.
 	
    b. Coordinates logistics information requirements with S4 Section.
 	
    c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S1 workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals.
 	
    d. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element.
 	
3. S1 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.
 	
    a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.
 	
    b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission.
 	
4. S1 Section drafts paragraph 2, Situation and Considerations.
 	
    a. Prepares brief summary that references the appropriate intelligence document.
 	
    b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on personnel activities.
 	
    c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence personnel activities.
 	
    d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3.
 	
    e. Lists disposition of logistics units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation.
 	
    f. Lists projected logistics developments that influence personnel operations.
 	
    g. Lists disposition of civil affairs units and installations that have an effect on the personnel situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists projected CMO developments likely to influence personnel operations.		
i. Prepares troop preparedness situation subparagraph.		
NOTE: Subparagraph includes: unit strength, maintenance, replacements, noncombat matters, soldier personnel readiness, service support, organizational climate, commitment, and cohesion factors.		
j. Lists all assumptions based on initial planning guidance.		
k. Prepares casualty estimate for each COA.		
5. S1 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis.		
a. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3.		
b. Lists problem areas, trends, and deficiencies impacting on troop preparedness of each COA.		
6. S1 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison.		
a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the personnel mission.		
b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA.		
7. S1 Section drafts paragraph 5, Recommendations and Conclusions.		
a. States supportability of mission from a personnel viewpoint.		
b. Selects COA that can be supported from the personnel standpoint.		
c. Lists major personnel deficiencies that require the commander's attention.		
d. Recommends specific methods for eliminating or reducing the effects of these major deficiencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*8. S1 approves personnel estimate.
 	
    a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written).
 	
9. S1 Section distributes the personnel estimate.
 	
    a. Incorporates comments, if required.
 	
    b. Forwards personnel estimate to S1 for signature.
 	
    c. Forwards personnel estimate to other staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S4 Section

TASK: Develop Logistics Estimate (63-1-4006) (<u>FM 100-10</u>, FM 101-5, FM 101-5-1)

   ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has disseminated the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The logistics estimate addresses internal battalion logistics only. S4 section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. The logistics estimate is distributed to battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistics estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP and/or Regulations (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase logistics estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S4 Section determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices.
 	
    a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analysis of the AO, and higher HQ logistics summaries.
 	
    b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP.
 	
    c. Identifies agencies and documents where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S4 Section assembles required information.
 	
    a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements with S2/S3 Section.
 	
    b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section.
 	
    c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as S4 workbook, CSSCS, situation maps, policy files, and journals.
 	
    d. Requests additional information requirement support from higher HQ staff element.
 	
3. S4 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.
 	
    a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.
 	
    b. Transcribes the commander's restated mission.
 	
4. S4 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations.
 	
    a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references.
 	
    b. States the effects of the intelligence situation on internal logistics activities.
 	
    c. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence internal logistics activities.
 	
    d. Lists all COA provided by the S2/S3 Section.
 	
    e. Lists disposition of personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the internal logistics situation.
 	
    f. Lists projected developments within the personnel field likely to influence internal logistics operations.
 	
    g. Lists disposition of CMO units that have an effect on internal logistics situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists developments within the CMO field likely to influence internal logistics operations.		
i. Prepares a general statement about present equipment on hand, supply status and maintenance posture.		
NOTE: Statement includes; repair times, posture of maintenance elements, impact of Class VII and IX on maintenance capability, and the status of Class VII items.		
j. Lists overall status of all classes of supply (obtained from CSSCS) and transportation assets.		
k. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance.		
5. S4 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action.		
a. Calculates the sufficiency of proposed area for internal logistics operations.		
b. Lists all COA provided by S2/S3 Section.		
c. Lists logistics and tactical impact for each COA.		
6. S4 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action.		
a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the internal logistics mission.		
b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA.		
NOTE: Analysis includes methods and modifications for overcoming deficiencies in each COA.		
7. S4 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions.		
a. States mission supportability from an internal logistics viewpoint.		
b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an internal logistics standpoint.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*8. S4 approves logistics estimate.
 	
    a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written).
 	
9. S4 Section distributes the logistics estimate.
 	
    a. Incorporates comments, if required.
 	
    b. Forwards logistics estimate to S4 for signature.
 	
    c. Forwards logistics estimate to other battalion staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Support Operations Estimate (63-1-4007) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, FM 100-10,
FM 100-16, FM 101-5-1)

| | ITERATION | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The battalion and higher HQ analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Tactical and intelligence information is transcribed from the intelligence estimate. The S2/S3 has provided the approved feasible COA. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limit for the completion of the estimate. This estimate addresses external support only. Support Operations Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications, appropriate BFACS and courier. The support operations estimate is distributed to battalion staff only. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Support operations estimate is prepared within the time specified in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in the TSOP (oral/written). At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase support operations estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 section NCOIC determines information requirements using analog and/or digital devices and logistics STAMIS.
 	
        a. Identifies information requirements by analyzing the commander's restated mission, analyses of the AO, and higher HQ OPLAN.
 	
        b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP.
 	
        c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where required information can be obtained.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
2. S2/S3 Section assembles required information.		
a. Coordinates tactical and intelligence information requirements.		
b. Coordinates personnel information requirements with S1 Section.		
c. Extracts required information from current information holdings, such as Support Operations workbook, situation maps, policy files, and journals.		
d. Identifies tentative supported units.		
e. Requests additional information requirements from higher HQ staff element using analog and/or digital communications.		
3. S2/S3 Section drafts references and paragraph 1, Mission.		
a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.		
b. Lists the commander's restated mission.		
4. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, The Situation and Considerations.		
a. Prepares brief intelligence summary with appropriate references.		
b. Lists the effects of the characteristics of the AO on support operations and mission accomplishment.		
c. States the affects of the intelligence situation on support activities.		
d. Lists disposition of all tactical units that influence support activities.		
e. Lists all provided COA.		
f. Lists disposition of all personnel and administration units and installations that have an effect on the support situation.		
g. Lists projected developments within the personnel and internal logistics field that could influence support operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
h. Lists disposition of CMO operations that have an effect on the support situation.		
i. Lists developments within the CMO field that could influence support operations.		
j. Provides overall status of logistics and CHS capabilities, distribution systems and any shortfalls that may impact on support operations.		
k. Provides current situation, status, and restrictions on the use of foreign nation resources.		
l. Lists all assumptions based on the initial planning guidance.		
5. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action.		
a. Calculates sufficiency of proposed area for support operations.		
b. Calculates total requirements to support proposed responsibility using CSSCS.		
c. Lists required organizational structure for each approved COA.		
d. Lists support deficiencies for each COA.		
6. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action.		
a. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA with respect to the accomplishment of the support mission.		
b. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA, to include methods of overcoming deficiencies or modifications required in each COA.		
7. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 5, Conclusions.		
a. States supportability of mission from an external support viewpoint.		
b. Selects best COA that can be supported from an external support viewpoint.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*8. S2/S3 Officer approves estimate.
 	
        a. Verifies content for completeness, correctness, and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
        b. Presents estimate to commander or XO and staff (oral or written).
 	
9. S2/S3 Section distributes the estimate.
 	
        a. Incorporates comments, if required.
 	
        b. Forwards estimate to Support Operations Officer for signature.
 	
        c. Forwards estimate to other battalion staff sections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Battalion Headquarters
                        S2/S3 Section

TASK: Develop Supporting Commander's (Operations) Estimate (63-1-4008) (<u>FM 101-5,</u>
                        FM 100-10, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: All primary staff estimates are completed. Each staff section has provided its recommended COA. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available.   The higher HQ and battalion's analyses of the AO and NBC Vulnerability Analysis are available. The XO has provided preparation guidance and time limitations for estimates. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Supporting commander's (operation) estimate is prepared within the time prescribed in the preparation guidance and in the format prescribed in Regulations or TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the supporting commander's (operation) estimate completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section conducts an NBC Vulnerability Analysis.
 	
          a. Identifies potential battalion AO.
 	
          b. Identifies all pertinent information required to perform the analysis.
 	
          c. Identifies potential threat nuclear, chemical or biological weapons delivery systems.
 	
NOTE: Delivery system information should include probable yield(s) and type agents associated with the threat and the range and location of delivery systems, if known.
 	
          d. Identifies location, size, shape, and posture of all subordinate units being analyzed.
 	
          e. Selects appropriate vulnerability radii.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Selects best nuclear vulnerability technique.		
g. Identifies "worst case" ground zero.		
h. Estimates fractional coverage.		
i. Compares estimated percentage of casualties or damage to commander's acceptable loss criteria.		
j. Recommends COA to decrease unit's vulnerability or increase protection.		
k. Forwards NBC Vulnerability Analysis to S2/S3 for approval or modification.		
2. S6 section prepares analog and digital communications estimate.		
NOTE: The S2/3 Section will perform this task step if the unit is without an S6 Section.		
a. Lists the COA provided by the S2/S3.		
b. Conducts a map reconnaissance to identify communications/automation limitations.		
c. Identifies current status of all battalion communications/automation equipment.		
d. Lists terrain factors that may affect communication/automation compatibility or vulnerability.		
e. Lists communications/automation factors that may be affected by the AO, enemy disposition and strength, enemy capabilities, or other information technology activities.		
f. Coordinates with S4 Section for the status of incoming communications/automation equipment.		
g. Coordinates with the supporting communications/automation element to identify the status of all nonoperational equipment.		
h. Lists advantages and disadvantages of each COA.		
i. Lists methods to eliminate or overcome all deficiencies.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
j. Conducts comparative analysis of each COA.		
k. Selects best COA to accomplish mission from a communications viewpoint.		
l. Forwards communications estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification.		
3. S2/S3 Section determines information requirements.		
a. Identifies information requirements by reviewing the battalion and higher HQ commanders' restated missions and OPLAN.		
b. Identifies policies and procedural requirements by reviewing the TSOP.		
c. Identifies agencies and/or documents where additional information requirements may be obtained.		
d. Identifies special requirements by reviewing other staff estimates.		
4. S2/S3 sections draft references and paragraph 1, Mission.		
a. Lists all maps, charts, or other documents required to understand the estimate.		
b. Lists the commander's restated mission.		
5. S2/S3 section draft paragraph 2, The Situation and Course of Action.		
a. Lists the nature of the operations to be supported.		
b. Lists the composition and locations of supported units.		
c. Lists peculiar or unusual support requirements and other factors pertaining to the supported force that affect the scope and size of the support mission.		
d. Lists the effects of the AO on the support mission.		
e. Lists all enemy capabilities that are a threat to the support mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
f. Lists aspects of the friendly situation that provide the basis for anticipated difficulties in the battalion's capability to provide required support.		
g. Lists phases of the operations that require a reassessment of support.		
h. Lists special support requirements and the phase of the operations in which they occur.		
i. Lists special support techniques or procedures required because of tactical operations.		
j. Lists the effects of logistic, personnel, and CMO situations within the battalion on mission accomplishment.		
k. Lists all projected difficulties that may influence the accomplishment of the mission.		
l. Lists all approved feasible COA.		
6. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Analysis of Courses of Action.		
a. Identifies the probable effect of each significant difficulty on the success of each COA.		
b. Prepares a COA matrix showing the advantages and disadvantages of each COA.		
c. Assigns probability of success to each COA.		
7. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 4, Comparison of Courses of Action.		
a. Conducts comparative analysis of the COA.		
b. Selects best COA.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

8. S2/S3 Section staffs supporting commander's (operation) estimate for review and comments using analog or digital devices.
 	
    a. Forwards estimate to other battalion staff sections for review and/or comments.
 	
    b. Forwards reviewed estimate to S2/S3 for approval or modification.
 	
    c. Resolves differences in conclusions concerning recommended COA prior to briefing the commander.
 	
9. Command Section conducts commander's decision briefing.
 	
    a. Organizes staff for commander's decision briefing.
 	
    b. Briefs commander on all aspects of the supporting commander's (operation) estimate.
 	
*10. Commander provides decision and concept of operations.
 	
    a. Modifies staff recommendations, if required.
 	
    b. Provides guidance for a new COA, if required.
 	
    c. Approves staff recommendations.
 	
    d. Translates the selected COA into a statement which describes the, who, what, when, where, how, and why.
 	
    e. Directs S2/S3 to issue warning order to subordinate units using appropriate analog and digital communications.
 	
NOTE: Warning order includes the following minimum information: mission, time of execution, earliest time of movement, time and location of OPLAN issue, and time check.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/S3 Section

TASK: Prepare Operations Plan/Operations Order and Annexes (63-1-4009) (FM 101-5,
                 AR 530-1, FM 101-5-1, FM 21-31)

   ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The supporting commander's (operation) estimate is approved. The commander has provided his decision and concept of operations. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The XO assigns preparation responsibilities for OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of OPLAN/OPORD and annexes. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital means of communications and by courier. OPLAN becomes OPORD upon implementation. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: OPLAN/OPORD and annexes are prepared IAW regulations within the time prescribed by the commander or XO. OPLAN/OPORD supports and articulates the commander's intent. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase OPLAN/OPORD and annexes completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization sections.
 	
    a. Lists maps, charts, sketches, or other documents used in preparation and required for complete understanding of OPLAN.
 	
    b. Transcribes time zone consistent with higher HQ OPLAN.
 	
    c. Lists battalion task organization, time, and effective date.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S2/S3 Section draft paragraph 1, Situation.
 	
    a. Lists composition, disposition, location, estimated strength, identification, and capabilities of enemy forces that can influence the battalion's logistics mission.
 	
    b. Lists in order by higher, adjacent, supporting, and reinforcing friendly forces that influence support operations.
 	
NOTE: List consists of units not previously named in the Task Organization.
 	
    c. Lists units attached to or detached from the battalion, with their attachment or detachment effective time, if applicable.
 	
    d. Lists commander's assumptions that may exist at the time the OPLAN becomes an OPORD.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission.
 	
    a. States tasks to be accomplished that address the who, what, when, where and time length of operation.
 	
    b. States the mission based on the commander's guidance and intent.
 	
4. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution.
 	
    a. States the commander's intention in sufficient detail to ensure appropriate actions by subordinate units.
 	
    b. States the commander's concept of operations for the execution of support mission from start to finish.
 	
    c. Lists the scheme of support that includes placement, movement, and primary mission of each subordinate unit.
 	
    d. Lists all details of coordination and control applicable to two or more units of the battalion including troop safety measures, MOPP levels, and restriction on use of chemical weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. S2/S3, S1, and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support.		
a. Update battle rosters and personnel status charts to reflect new task organization.		
b. Develop estimates of injured, sick, and wounded rates.		
c. Prepare "personnel" portion of paragraph 4, Service Support.		
d. Provide support instructions, logistics and CHS distribution schemes and other arrangements that support the operations and are of primary interests to subordinate units.		
e. Reference higher HQ service support paragraph, when it is lengthy and the details are included in higher HQ service support paragraph.		
6. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal.		
a. Lists location of the CP, alternate CP, and liaison requirements different than those stated in TSOP.		
b. Lists all information technologies including index of the effective SOI/SSI and instructions for the use of local area networks, automation, radio, pyrotechnics, or restriction on the employment of analog or digital communications.		
c. Provides acknowledgement instructions, commander's signature block, authentication section, and distribution instructions.		
7. S2/S3 Section task organizes subordinate units/elements for the support mission.		
a. Identifies total support requirements by reviewing the commander's planning guidance and the restated mission.		
b. Identifies unit availability by inspecting Higher HQ OPLAN.		
c. Identifies where to reduce or add units or elements by reviewing supported forces scheme of maneuver and terrain factors.		
d. Organizes subordinate units based on their capability to accommodate the support mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

8. S2/S3 Section drafts the task organization annex.
 	
    a. Lists each assigned or attached unit and their tentative location and appropriate time of attachment.
 	
    b. Forwards annex to the S2/S3 for approval or modification.
 	
    c. Distributes annex to all appropriate staff sections and organic and attached units using appropriate BFACS.
 	
    d. Attaches task organization annex to the OPLAN/OPORD.
 	
9. S2/S3 Section drafts an operations overlay.
 	
    a. States map reference data, effective date, and purpose of the overlay.
 	
    b. Lists classification markings and downgrading instructions, if applicable.
 	
    c. Applies overlay plotting techniques.
 	
    d. Plots boundaries, supporting, supported, and subordinate units' locations within 50 meters.
 	
    e. Affixes graphic portrayal of axis of advance, supply routes, and unit locations.
 	
    f. Forwards operations overlay to the S2/S3 for approval or modification using MCS.
 	
    g. Attaches overlay to the OPLAN/OPORD as an annex.
 	
10. S2/S3 Section consolidates staff input.
 	
    a. Verifies staff input for completeness and compliance with commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Prepares revised copy of OPLAN/OPORD.
 	
    c. Forwards draft copy to commander or XO for approval or modification.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

11. S2/S3 Section distributes the OPLAN/OPORD using analog or digital devices.
 	
    a. Prepares appropriate number copies of OPLAN/OPORD.
 	
    b. Distributes OPLAN/OPORD to all appropriate staff sections, organic, and attached units using MCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Develop Road Movement Order (63-1-4010) (<u>FM 55-1</u>, FM 100-10, FM 101-5,
FM 3-3, FM 55-10, FM 55-30)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has provided his planning guidance and restated mission. The supporting commander's (operation) estimate with specific COA has been approved. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for the movement order in coordination with the Support Operations and S4 Sections. The battalion has responsibility for movement of all its subordinate units. Future locations of subordinate units have been identified and coordinated with higher HQ staff element. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement order is prepared IAW regulations and/or TSOP within the time established in the preparation guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase road movement order completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. S2/S3 Section determines additional requirements for movement of subordinate elements using analog and/or digital devices.		
a. Identifies adjacent unit boundaries and all other areas of responsibility to be crossed by the battalion's subordinate units.		
b. Identifies the probable security requirement by reviewing intelligence estimates and summaries.		
c. Identifies the current mobility status of each subordinate element.		
2. S2/S3 Section selects tentative march route(s).		
a. Identifies all possible routes by conducting map reconnaissance.		
b. Identifies possible tactical implications for all possible routes in close coordination with the supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Identifies possible problem areas and road traffic ability from engineer road classification overlays and intelligence summaries.
 	
    d. Conducts comparative analysis of all possible routes.
 	
    e. Selects best possible route(s).
 	
    f. Coordinates route selection with higher HQ and other battalion staff sections using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    g. Forwards route(s) selection to S2/S3 for approval or modification.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section directs route reconnaissance activities.
 	
    a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using MTS or appropriate analog or digital communications.
 	
    b. Requests MP route reconnaissance overlay.
 	
    c. Tasks subordinate units to conduct reconnaissance of tentative march routes using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.
 	
    d. Briefs HQ company reconnaissance leader.
 	
    e. Monitors movement and activities of all reconnaissance parties to ensure compliance with instructions and TSOP using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.
 	
    f. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance leader upon completion of mission.
 	
4. S2/S3 Section selects specific march route(s).
 	
    a. Consolidates all route reconnaissance party(s) data.
 	
    b. Conducts comparative analysis of all data for each tentative route.
 	
    c. Selects primary and secondary route(s) for each subordinate element.
 	
    d. Coordinates battalion HQ route with HQ company commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Prepares analog/digital overlays using subordinate unit reconnaissance data.		
f. Provides reconnaissance and route selection update to the commander.		
g. Forwards all reconnaissance data to higher HQ, adjacent, and subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.		
5. S4 Section coordinates internal support requirements for move.		
a. Coordinates supply support with subordinate and attached units.		
b. Coordinates maintenance support with subordinate and attached units.		
c. Coordinates transportation support with subordinate and attached units.		
d. Coordinates food service support with subordinate and attached units.		
6. S2/S3 Section coordinates external movement support requirements using analog or digital communications.		
a. Coordinates additional external transportation requirements with the responsible movement control agency.		
b. Coordinates route clearances with responsible movement control agency or supporting rear operations element.		
c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation requirements and procedures with supporting medical element.		
d. Coordinates security escort, fire support, and CAS requirements with supporting rear operations element.		
e. Coordinates MP traffic control support with supporting MP element and rear operations element.		
f. Coordinates decontamination requirements with higher HQ chemical officer.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

g. Coordinates smoke requirements with higher HQ chemical officer.
 	
      h. Coordinates external movement support using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.
 	
7. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement schemes for HQ company.
 	
      a. Coordinates with HQ company commander for the task organization and order of march for HQ company.
 	
      b. Debriefs HQ company reconnaissance personnel.
 	
      c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays for HQ company.
 	
      d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with the HQ company commander.
 	
8. S2/S3 section develops plan.
 	
      a. Calculates projected support requirements until new operational sites are established by evaluating current supported units' assets.
 	
      b. Coordinates anticipated requirements with supported units in current AO.
 	
      c. Provides recommendations for order of movement for companies/detachments and specific shuttling of high priority support assets.
 	
      d. Establishes notification procedures to alert customers of what facilities will be available during movement.
 	
9. S2/S3 Section develops overall movement scheme for move.
 	
      a. Identifies the task organization for movement with critical supplies and equipment dispersed throughout all elements.
 	
      b. Assigns order of march for move by placing elements of critical support items in the first serial.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Prepares road movement table(s), graphs, and overlays.
 	
NOTE: Under MOPP4 conditions, road movement tables should be increased a minimum of 3 times the normal movement time.
 	
    d. Coordinates advance/quartering party composition and departure time with all subordinate units' commanders using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.
 	
10. S2/S3 Section drafts Reference, Time Zone Used, and Task Organization Sections.
 	
    a. Lists all maps and overlays, charts, or other documents required to understand the order.
 	
    b. Transcribes time zone used throughout from higher HQ OPLAN.
 	
    c. Identifies task organization of battalion as directed by S2/S3.
 	
11. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 1, Situation.
 	
    a. Provides weather forecast for duration of move and its effect on route(s).
 	
    b. Provides terrain analysis and its effects on the move.
 	
    c. Lists enemy disposition, strength, and capability factors affecting battalion movement.
 	
    d. Lists all friendly units that provide support to the battalion during the move.
 	
    e. Lists attachments and detachments initiated for movement purposes only.
 	
12. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 2, Mission.
 	
    a. States those tasks to be accomplished, addressing who, what, when, why, and where.
 	
    b. Provides overall movement mission statement that includes the purpose of movement and the start times.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
13. S2/S3 Section drafts paragraph 3, Execution.		
a. Provides brief statement on the concept of the move.		
b. Lists all subordinate elements' taskings required to complete battalion move.		
c. Lists all coordinating instructions applicable to two or more companies and the battalion HQ.		
14. S2/S3 and S4 Sections draft paragraph 4, Service Support.		
a. Lists all units and the service support they provide to at least two subordinate units and the battalion HQ.		
b. Lists all traffic control support that affects at least two subordinate units and battalion HQ.		
c. Lists the HQ company's service support functions.		
15. S2/S3 and S6 Sections draft paragraph 5, Command and Signal and the Authentication Section.		
a. Lists position of command group in the HQ company move and the location of battalion HQ during the battalion move.		
b. Lists CP closing and opening times and new location.		
c. Lists all analog and digital communications information.		
NOTE: List includes effective SOI/SSI, instructions on the use of analog and/or digital communications, and pyrotechnics, and any restrictions or special communications procedures.		
d. Lists acknowledgement instructions appropriate signature block, and distribution instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

16. S2/S3 Section distributes movement order.
 	
    a. Coordinates movement order review with other battalion staff sections.
 	
    b. Forwards draft movement order to the S2/S3 for approval or modifications.
 	
    c. Distributes approved movement order to appropriate staff sections, subordinate, and attached units using analog and/or digital communications or hard copy format.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
071-326-0515	Select a Movement Route Using a Map	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Battalion Headquarters
  S1 Section
  S2/3 Section
  S4 Section

TASK: Develop Occupation Plan (63-1-4011) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, FM 101-5-1, FM 10-27-2, FM 10-27-3, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 5-103)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The XO has assigned responsibility for planning the occupation of new AO to the staff. The S2/3 has primary responsibility in coordination with other battalion staff sections. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion TSOP has been updated to accommodate changing procedural requirements. Subordinate units' missions have been identified. Tentative subordinate units and battalion HQ locations have been designated. Current analog/digital situation maps are available. Higher HQ staff element has provided reconnaissance information furnished by units previously located in the general area. Higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO are available. Some areas selected may be in or around cities or towns. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Occupation plan is prepared IAW TSOP and is in compliance with commander's guidance. The areas selected support subordinate units and battalion HQ personnel, equipment, and mission requirements. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase occupation plan completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section verifies the suitability of the new area by ground or map reconnaissance.
 	
    a. Calculates space requirements for number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area.
 	
    b. Identifies space availability to support number and type of elements and base facilities proposed in the new area.
 	
    c. Identifies ability of area to support the battalion's equipment and vehicles.
 	
    d. Identifies accessibility of roads and size of areas around buildings (MOUT environment).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Identifies availability of area cover and concealment.		
f. Identifies area suitability for helicopter landing sites.		
2. Staff Sections provide a support analysis of tentative operational areas.		
a. Identify specific functional area advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas by reviewing higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO.		
b. Perform analog and digital communications support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.		
c. Perform CHS analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.		
d. Perform NBC defense analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.		
e. Perform ADP analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.		
f. Perform OPSEC analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed area.		
g. Perform support analysis citing advantages and disadvantages of proposed areas.		
h. Forward analysis reports to S2/3 Section.		
3. S2/3 Section selects final sites for subordinate units and the battalion HQ.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and digital communications.		
b. Identifies specific missions for each subordinate unit in the battalion.		
c. Identifies proposed locations of all subordinate units and battalion HQ.		
d. Posts proposed battalion HQ and subordinate units' positions on the analog/digital situation map(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinates proposed site selections with subordinate units and battalion staff using analog and digital communications or MTS.		
f. Briefs proposed sites and rationale to the commander or XO for approval or modifications.		
g. Forwards approved site selections to higher HQ, battalion staff, and subordinate units using analog and digital communications or MTS.		
h. Prepares analog/digital map overlays with all appropriate boundaries, supply routes, and unit locations using symbols.		
4. S2/3 Section formulates a tentative battalion and CP area layout plan.		
a. Designates a general location for the LOC site.		
b. Designates location of CP elements.		
c. Designates location of subordinate units.		
d. Prepares a traffic circulation plan that depicts the traffic pattern for key roads in the battalion area and the CP area.		
e. Prepares communication plan that shows wire diagrams that connect all subordinate elements and includes instructions for runners system until wire communications are operational.		
f. Prepares a hasty security plan that provides minimum requirements for all subordinate units.		
g. Disseminates battalion layout plan to all subordinate units and the battalion advance/quartering party leader using analog and digital communications.		
5. S2/3 Section plans battalion advance/quartering party activities.		
a. Identifies battalion advance/quartering party's personnel and equipment composition and limitations from the TSOP.		
b. Provides advance/quartering party personnel, equipment, and vehicle limitations to each subordinate unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Provides assembly area location and reporting times to each subordinate unit. d. Coordinates forward staff personnel requirements with each staff section and the XO. e. Identifies all area preparation tasks that are not included in the TSOP. f. Briefs battalion advance/quartering party leader on area preparation, vehicles, equipment, and options caused by change in METT-TC.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/3 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Area Tactical Operations (63-1-4012) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 34-130, FM 7-20)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The higher HQ and battalion analyses of the AO are available. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The battalion HQ is the BCOC for the assigned area. Coordination has been established with the responsible rear operations element for required assistance, if needed. The battalion TSOP is available to provide guidance in planning future tactical activities. Tentative locations of subordinate units and support facilities have been designated. The threat has the capability of intelligence gathering and launching NBC attacks into the battalion area. The S2/3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: NBC defense, OPSEC, and deception plans implement the commander's guidance, concept of operations, and provide procedures and measures to overcome or reduce the NBC and information collection threat. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase planning completion times.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/3 Section analyzes tactical NBC information.
 	
    a. Identifies established policies and procedures located in TSOP.
 	
    b. Identifies NBC threat capabilities and recommended countermeasures by reviewing higher HQ NBC vulnerability analysis.
 	
    c. Identifies potential targets in the battalion area for NBC weapons.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S2/3 Section prepares NBC defense plan.
 	
  a. Establishes procedures and measures that reduce unit vulnerability through terrain shielding and increased protective measures.
 	
  b. Specifies levels of protection that correspond with the NBC threat, including MOPP levels.
 	
  c. Establishes procedures for receiving and submitting reports on threat use of NBC weapons, if different from those in the TSOP.
 	
  d. Develops monitoring and survey plans that establish policies and procedures for subordinate units' survey, monitor, and decontamination team's operations.
 	
  e. Develops personnel, equipment, and support site decontamination plan that establishes priorities for decontamination in coordination with the S2/3.
 	
  f. Establishes coordination procedures for requesting additional support.
 	
  g. Provides commander's radiation exposure guidance.
 	
  h. Establishes nuclear, biological, and chemical medical evacuation and treatment support procedures in coordination with S1 and the supporting medical element.
 	
  i. Establishes alternate methods and levels of support in coordination with S2/3 Section.
 	
  j. Consolidates NBC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP.
 	
  k. Forwards the NBC defense plan to the S2/3 for approval or modification.
 	
  l. Disseminates the NBC defense plan to all appropriate staff sections and subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

3. S2/3 Section prepares OPSEC plan.
 	
    a. Identifies established policies and procedures in the battalion TSOP.
 	
    b. Identifies threat intelligence collection capabilities.
 	
    c. Identifies EEFI indicators that affect or compromise information.
 	
    d. Identifies all countermeasures and deception requirements, including defense against DE devices.
 	
    e. Transcribes required information from higher HQ OPSEC annexes to OPLAN.
 	
    f. Consolidates OPSEC information into appropriate format IAW the TSOP.
 	
    g. Forwards draft OPSEC plan to S2/3 for approval or modifications.
 	
    h. Disseminates OPSEC plan to all battalion staff sections and subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: S2/S3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Rear Operations (63-1-4014) (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5-1, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-4, FM 7-20)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The commander has approved the supporting commander's (operation) estimate and provided his decision and concept of operations. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The XO assigns responsibilities for the preparation of rear operations annex to S2/S3. The S2/S3 has staff responsibility for consolidation, publication, and distribution of the rear operations annex. The responsible rear operations command and control element has provided input for the battalion's participation and integration into rear operations. The S2/S3 Section continuously receives messages from higher, adjacent, and lower echelons by analog and/or digital communications and by courier. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Rear operations annex is prepared IAW regulations and TSOP, and conforms to the commander's and supporting rear operation element's guidance. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase rear operations annex completion time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. S2/S3 Section develops direct and indirect fire plan.
 	
    a. Identifies boundaries as assigned by the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations command and control element.
 	
    b. Identifies probable enemy avenues of approach and their effects on the battalion's area of responsibility.
 	
    c. Assigns boundaries to all subordinate units and separate elements using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
NOTE: Boundaries should be based on number of personnel assigned, type of weapons systems, mission of unit and METT-TC.
 	
    d. Identifies weapon systems that are available to the battalion in coordination with the supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

e. Identifies probable engagement areas.
 	
     f. Selects target reference points in coordination with designated fire support element.
 	
     g. Prioritizes defense of sustainment bases and facilities in coordination with the Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element.
 	
     h. Develops fire support request and coordination measures in coordination with designated fire support element.
 	
2. S2/S3 Section develops mobility and countermobility plan.
 	
     a. Identifies all obstacle constraints and restrictions in the higher HQ and/or supporting rear operations element's plan.
 	
     b. Identifies all possible obstacles by location and type.
 	
     c. Identifies all available obstacle assets.
 	
     d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the S4 and supporting engineer element using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
3. S2/S3 Section develops air defense plan.
 	
     a. Identifies all established air defense policies and procedures in the higher HQ OPLAN/OPORD and the battalion TSOP.
 	
     b. Identifies probable air avenues of approach.
 	
     c. Establishes air defense priorities for designated areas and facilities in coordination with supporting rear operations and air defense elements.
 	
     d. Establishes air defense assistance coordination measures.
 	
     e. Establishes air defense warning signals, if different than those set forth in TSOP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

4. S2/S3 Section develops battalion internal response force plan.
 	
    a. Identifies response force composition and requirements in the TSOP.
 	
    b. Revises response force structure and subordinate units' taskings as dictated by current tactical situation.
 	
    c. Identifies battalion assembly point location(s).
 	
    d. Coordinates additional equipment/supply requirements with the S4 Section.
 	
    e. Develops response force training plan.
 	
    f. Tasks subordinate elements to provide required personnel and equipment for battalion response force based on present for duty strength and current mission.
 	
5. S6 Section develops communications plan.
 	
    a. Develops intra-base cluster analog and/or digital communications plan that encompasses all units located within the battalion's area of responsibility.
 	
    b. Develops external analog and digital communications plan that interfaces with higher HQ, supporting rear operations element, fire support, and air support elements.
 	
    c. Designates rear operations passwords, call signs, frequencies, and procedures.
 	
    d. Coordinates overall analog and/or digital communications plan with supporting signal element and supporting rear operations element.
 	
    e. Establishes a messenger system with runner as a backup communications system.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
6. S4 Section develops logistics plan in coordination with S1 Section.		
a. Calculates tentative logistics requirements for response force and external reaction forces.		
b. Designates responsibility for resupply of equipment and supplies to specific subordinate units.		
c. Coordinates medical treatment and evacuation plan with the supporting medical element.		
7. S2/S3 Section coordinates rear operations for battalion elements in other areas of responsibility.		
a. Coordinates subordinate units' responsibilities with the rear operations element responsible for that area.		
b. Establishes rear operations policies, procedures, and reports for units outside battalion's area of responsibility.		
8. S4 Section develops ADC plan in coordination with the S2/S3 Section.		
a. Identifies all established policies and procedures in higher HQ OPLAN and the battalion TSOP.		
b. Calculates probable ADC requirements in the battalion's area of responsibility.		
c. Identifies current ADC assets within the battalion.		
d. Coordinates additional support requirements with the higher HQ S4 Section.		
e. Assigns specific functions to all subordinate units IAW battalion TSOP.		
f. Coordinates ADC plans and procedures with the supporting MP element.		
g. Coordinates ADC priorities with Support Operations and S2/S3 Sections.		
h. Identifies alternate operational sites or alert sites in coordination with Support Operations Section and supporting rear operations element.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

i. Establishes warning or alert system, if different from battalion TSOP.
 	
    j. Develops ADC training and rehearsal plan.
 	
9. S2/S3 Section prepares rear operations annex.
 	
    a. Consolidates input into appropriate format.
 	
    b. Coordinates draft rear operations annex with all other battalion staff sections.
 	
    c. Forwards draft rear operations annex to S2/S3 for approval or modification.
 	
    d. Distributes annex to all appropriate battalion staff sections, subordinate units, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate analog or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
061-283-1002	Locate a Target by Grid Coordinates	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Establish Communications (63-1-4017) (<u>FM 24-16</u>, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1,
AR 530-1, FM 24-18, FM 24-22, FM 24-35, FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT	T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion communications personnel have accompanied the advance party to the new area. The TSOPs, OPORDs, and other required documents are available. The battalion advance/quartering party has secured the new area. The location for the LOC is identified. The analog and/or digital communication plan is available. Equipment and personnel are available. Initial communications are established by the advance communications element. Message service is provided on a 24-hour basis. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Analog and/or digital communications, local area networks, and generator power are established IAW the communication plan, OPORD, SOI/SSI, and TSOP. At MOPP4 performance degradation factors increase the time required to establish communication.

NOTE: The S2/3 Section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion HQ does not have a S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. S6 Section organizes communications element of the advance/quartering party.
 	
     a. Selects branch personnel to perform all communication setup tasks at new location.
 	
     b. Selects required vehicles and equipment to establish communications at the new site IAW movement order or TSOP.
 	
     c. Coordinates area analog and digital communication system support at the new location with supporting signal element.
 	
     d. Inspects personnel, vehicles, and equipment prior to departure for compliance with TSOP and commander's guidance.
 	
     e. Dispatches communications element to assembly area.
 	
     f. Ensures radio communications exist during a move between the start point and release point.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S6 Section provides assistance for area communications system hookup.
 	
    a. Identifies location of the battalion switchboard in coordination with headquarters advance element leader.
 	
    b. Identifies all other elements that require area communication system hookup.
 	
3. Commo Section installs local and area networks.
 	
    a. Determines communications service requirements.
 	
    b. Ensures analog and/or digital communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units.
 	
    c. Plans backup means of communications.
 	
    d. Implements backup or alternate means of communications.
 	
4. S6 Section performs system/software security manager functions.
 	
    a. Issues passwords.
 	
    b. Installs anti-virus software.
 	
    c. Performs CSSCS network management functions in support of S2/3 Section.
 	
    d. Coordinates with the CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS.
 	
    e. Advises the commander, staff, and subordinate units on communications matters.
 	
    f. Coordinates with S2/3 Section to ensure COOP is included in communications estimate/plan.
 	
5. S6 Section establishes wire communications.
 	
    a. Identifies locations of all subordinate units' CPs.
 	
    b. Plans wire and telephone installation.
 	
    c. Prepares a telephone traffic diagram.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Installs telephone switchboard.		
e. Installs telephones.		
f. Lays wire for communications between switchboard and other subordinate units.		
g. Establishes wire communications between LOC and switchboard.		
h. Establishes other wire communications between switchboard and other subordinate units when area signal support personnel arrive.		
i. Tests each telephone circuit to ensure there are no breaks in the wire system.		
j. Operates the battalion switchboard.		
*6. S6 Section selects radio communications site.		
a. Selects best location for primary common site based on tactical and technical requirements in coordination with the advance/quartering party leader.		
b. Identifies support requirements for common site, such as fuel, water, maintenance, and rations.		
c. Selects alternate communications site(s).		
d. Selects locations away from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.		
e. Establishes physical security control of COMSEC material and documents containing EEFI.		
f. Incorporates signal site defense plan with overall defense plan.		
7. S6 Section establishes generator power.		
a. Selects generator power sites.		
b. Establishes fire and fuel storage points.		
c. Levels generator sets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Conducts preoperational PMCS on generator sets.		
e. Grounds generator sets.		
f. Connects DC power cable.		
g. Performs generator starting procedures.		
h. Accomplishes transition to generator power with minimum interruption of communications.		
i. Constructs sound barriers and screening system to muffle noise and reduce heat signal.		
j. Operates generator sets IAW appropriate TM.		
8. S6 Section establishes a message center.		
a. Establishes primary and alternate messenger routes and schedules.		
b. Coordinates pickup and delivery times with users.		
c. Identifies type of messengers to be used.		
d. Establishes message control and accountability procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Operate Tactical Support Area of the Logistics Operations Center (63-1-4037)
                 (FM 101-5, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Battalion's support operations have commenced. The LOC is divided into two major areas, the support and the tactical support areas. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Threat has the capability to employ units in rear areas, to disrupt support to fighting units, and to use EW to disrupt communications. The operation of the LOC is required to coordinate the battalion's tactical activities. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All tactical information relative to the battalion's survival is disseminated to all subordinate and attached units. At MOPP4, performance factors minimally degrade LOC operational efficiency.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

*1. S2/3 supervises tactical support area operations.
 	
        a. Assigns specific areas of responsibility and work shifts to all assigned staff members for a 24-hour operation.
 	
        b. Enforces sleep plans that are consistent with phases of the operation.
 	
        c. Monitors the performance of personnel in their functional areas to ensure compliance with established guidance and the TSOP.
 	
        d. Conducts detailed shift change briefings.
 	
        e. Provides briefing on current tactical situation to the commander and/or XO.
 	
        f. Coordinates tactical support area operations with higher, adjacent, and lower HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
g. Disseminates information to higher, adjacent, and lower HQ using analog and/or digital communications or MTS.		
h. Conducts continuous intelligence preparation of the battlefield.		
2. Commo Section maintains analog and/or digital communications systems.		
a. Monitors all radio/digital networks in order of priority as specified in the OPORD and/or TSOP.		
b. Operates battalion NCS IAW TSOP, OPORD, and SOI/SSI.		
c. Develops alternate communications plan for implementation when established methods are disrupted or fail.		
d. Issues passwords to subordinate and attached units.		
e. Installs anti-virus software on automation equipment belonging to subordinate and attached units.		
3. S2/3 Section disseminates intelligence and weather information.		
a. Inspects intelligence summaries and reports for pertinency to battalion operations and security.		
b. Inspects weather reports for data that could have significant effects on the battalion's security.		
c. Forwards pertinent intelligence and weather information to all subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		
4. S2/3 Section supervises battalion's participation in the higher HQ OPSEC plan.		
a. Disseminates higher HQ countermeasure requirements to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.		
b. Supervises implementation of countermeasures that overcome threat capabilities in SIGINT, HUMINT, and imagery collection.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

c. Inspects subordinate units' positions for OPSEC compliance and effectiveness.
 	
     d. Provides feedback reports to higher HQ on activities that affect OPSEC measures using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
5. S2/3 Section coordinates NBC defense activities.
 	
     a. Disseminates higher HQ NBC data that pertains to battalion operations to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
     b. Supervises NBC defense preparations as directed by the higher HQ staff element and/or the commander.
 	
6. S2/3 Section performs tactical support area duties.
 	
     a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
     b. Maintains current staff journal(s) entries IAW current command policy and TSOP.
 	
     c. Maintains current analog/digital operational maps and overlays depicting all friendly and enemy locations within 50 meters of actual location that affect the battalion's operations.
 	
NOTE: All manual entries are posted within 50 meters of actual location.
 	
     d. Maintains section workbook(s) that contain incoming messages and reports under the appropriate heading and cross-references.
 	
     e. Maintains current journal files that contain material necessary to support all daily staff journal entries.
 	
     f. Maintains current NBC analog/digital situation maps and overlays.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Maintain Communications (63-1-4041) (<u>FM 24-35</u>, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, AR 530-1, FM 24-18, FM 24-33, FM 24-35-1, FM 3-4)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: Operations have commenced. Coordination of operations is conducted by analog and/or digital means of communications and courier. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. The threat is capable of locating, identifying, and rapidly exploiting all types of communications. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Uninterrupted 24-hour analog and/or digital communications is provided to battalion HQ and all subordinate units through one or more external means. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to maintain the communications system.

NOTE: The S2/3 Section must perform all the below task steps and performance measures if the battalion HQ does not have a S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Commo Section performs functions related to information technology operations.		
a. Exercises staff supervision over communications services.		
b. Identifies requirements for communications services.		
c. Issues passwords to subordinate and attached units.		
d. Installs software on automation equipment belonging to subordinate and attached units.		
e. Performs CSSCS network management functions.		
f. Coordinates with CSSAMO to resolve application problems with CSS STAMIS and CSSCS.		
g. Identifies communications links with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supported units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. Commo Section performs network management functions for all tactical automation.
 	
    a. Troubleshoots hardware needing repair.
 	
    b. Monitors contractor repair performance.
 	
    c. Collects status from subordinate and attached elements for the Army Battlefield Command System and the CSSAMO for CSS STAMIS.
 	
3. Commo Section performs functions in support of local area networks.
 	
    a. Installs local area networks.
 	
    b. Operates local area networks.
 	
    c. Operates the battalion switchboard.
 	
    d. Serves as net control station.
 	
    e. Performs unit level maintenance on all communications electronic equipment in HQ element.
 	
4. Commo Section operates NCS.
 	
    a. Opens net IAW current SOI/SSI.
 	
    b. Challenges all stations in net as required in the SOI/SSI.
 	
    c. Controls entry and departure of all stations.
 	
    d. Corrects all errors in net operating procedures.
 	
    e. Enforces station and net restrictions.
 	
    f. Observes radio and listening silence periods as prescribed by Division OPORD or the commander's directives.
 	
    g. Completes transition to extended range of radio station within 15 minutes, if required.
 	
    h. Remote radio station(s) at least one kilometer, if required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
5. Commo Section manages message traffic.		
a. Processes messages by precedence, date, and time group IAW the TSOP.		
b. Processes incoming messages without errors.		
c. Forwards incoming messages to appropriate element or section.		
d. Checks outgoing messages for completeness and readability.		
e. Employs approved radiotelephone procedures.		
f. Transmits messages IAW precedence, correct format, and prescribed text.		
g. Employs approved codes and brevity lists when transmitting the names of persons, places, and sensitive information.		
h. Decrypts all incoming messages.		
i. Encrypts all outgoing messages.		
j. Transmits messages for no longer than 20 seconds.		
k. Employs lowest operational power setting consistent with operational requirements.		
l. Monitors radio communications during unit moves between the SP and the RP.		
6. Commo Section employs SIGSEC measures.		
a. Employs COMSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to deny friendly telecommunications information to the enemy.		
b. Employs ELSEC measures IAW SOI/SSI to protect electromagnetic transmissions, other than communications devices, from threat detection.		
c. Evaluates TEMPEST controls to identify emanation vulnerabilities and countermeasures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
d. Processes initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports from assigned and attached elements.		
e. Forwards MIJI Feeder Voice Template Reports to Division HQ and supporting signal element IAW TSOP and SOI/SSI.		
7. S6 Section maintains landline communications.		
a. Maintains wire communications between the battalion CP and all assigned and attached elements.		
b. Maintains a hot loop between the CP and all assigned and attached elements, if switchboard is not available.		
c. Establishes messenger runner when land communications is inoperative.		
8. Radio operators implement remedial ECCM.		
a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna.		
b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.		
c. Switch to high power on receiver-transmitters.		
d. Recommend distant stations switch to high power.		
e. Relocate radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.		
f. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.		
g. Submit initial MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to supporting Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		
h. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications (such as relay [through another station] or wire).		
i. Request, using alternate means, that the net change to a backup frequency.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

9. Radio operators implement AM remedial ECCM.
 	
    a. Identify whether the source of interference is internal or external by the radio antenna.
 	
    b. Continue to operate in an attempt to communicate through the jamming.
 	
    c. Check for intentional or unintentional interference.
 	
    d. Check equipment grounding.
 	
    e. Use radio frequency gain/frequency vernier in an attempt to work through the jamming.
 	
    f. Relocate the radio set (mobile units) to take advantage of terrain features to reduce effects of jamming.
 	
    g. Relocate the antenna to take advantage of terrain features to reduce the effects of jamming.
 	
    h. Submit MIJI Feeder Voice Template Report to the Signal Telecommunications Battalion (Area) signal element using analog land digital communications or appropriate BFACS.
 	
    i. Reroute message traffic using alternate means of communications (such as relay [through another radio station], FM, or wire).
 	
    j. Request, using alternate means, that the net change to alternate frequency.
 	
10. Commo Section maintains generator power.
 	
    a. Operates generators IAW appropriate TM.
 	
    b. Constructs sound barrier and screening system to muffle noise and reduce heat signature.
 	
    c. Constructs fuel storage and fire control point for all generators as prescribed by the TSOP and commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

11. Commo Section provides unit level maintenance support.
 	
    a. Responds to calls for assistance within 30 minutes.
 	
    b. Makes organizational level repairs on communications equipment.
 	
    c. Evacuates equipment to DS maintenance unit.
 	
    d. Maintains authorized PLL levels.
 	
    e. Picks up repaired equipment from DS maintenance unit.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	Task Title	References
113-573-8006	Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Battalion Headquarters

TASK: Provide Command and Control (63-1-4045) (<u>FM 10-27-3</u>, AR 530-1, FM 100-10,
                 FM 101-5, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-4)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | | | | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: Support operations have commenced. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. During operations, members of the Command Section become casualties. Field expedient and natural shelters are available. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Command Section commands and controls all subordinate unit activities IAW plans, established policies and directives, and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase time of decision making procedures and activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section supervises activities of subordinate units.		
a. Directs, redirects, cross-levels, or masses logistics and CHS resources within area of responsibility based on guidance from higher HQ and METT-TC.		
b. Monitors performance of subordinate elements to ensure required level of efficiency as prescribed in plans, policies, directives, and the TSOP, is maintained.		
c. Monitors support plans to determine overall effectiveness.		
d. Assigns specific tasks to subordinate units.		
e. Monitors implementation of decisions, directives, and instructions to determine subordinate unit's compliance.		
f. Issues FRAGOs to implement changes to the OPORD and annexes using analog and/or digital communications.		
g. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*2. XO supervises staff activities.		
a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.		
b. Formulates staff operating policies.		
c. Supervises maintenance of master policy files.		
d. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.		
e. Coordinates assigned mission with subordinate units' commanders using analog and/or digital communications.		
f. Supervises the operations of the LOC.		
3. Command Section exchanges information.		
a. Transforms pertinent information into usable data for decision making.		
b. Coordinates information exchange within and with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units using analog and digital communications.		
c. Conducts operational briefings as necessary.		
4. Command Section provides staff liaison.		
a. Provides planning assistance to any supported units, if requested.		
b. Provides assistance in planning contingency operations, when required.		
5. Command Section maintains policy files.		
a. Maintains current policy files by tabbing and indexing.		
b. Maintains current staff journals.		
c. Maintains current section's workbook files.		
d. Maintains current section situation maps and overlays using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

6. Command Section reacts to loss of key personnel.
 	
    a. Realigns staff based on line of succession or commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Maintains continuity of operations.
 	
    c. Forwards casualty reports to higher HQ S1 Section using analog and/or digital communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: S2/3 Section

TASK: Operate Base Cluster Operations Center (63-1-4050) (FM 10-27-3, AR 380-19, AR 530-1, FM 100-10, FM 101-5, FM 3-4)

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	(circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT		T	P	U	(circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy units have been spotted in the support area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Initial reports indicate the threat potential is Level II or III. During Level II and III threats, the tactical portion of the ALOC assumes the duties of a BCOC. Threat has the capability to employ units into the rear areas to disrupt support to forward areas. The rear operations annex and TSOP are available. Threat information is provided by the higher HQ staff element and/or the supporting rear operations element. The operation of the BCOC is required to coordinate defensive measures in the assigned battalion area. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All defensive reactions and survival techniques are coordinated and orchestrated by the BCOC IAW rear operations plan and the TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease BCOC operational efficiency.

NOTE: S2/3 Section must perform all task steps, if unit does not have an S6 Section.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

1. Commo Section establishes rear operations communications network.
 	
      a. Maintains analog and/or digital communications with the BCOC.
 	
      b. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with the supporting rear operations element.
 	
      c. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with the higher HQ staff element.
 	
      d. Establishes analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ.
 	
      e. Develops alternate communications plan that is implemented when established methods are disrupted or fail.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

2. S2/3 Section coordinates base cluster defensive activities.
 	
        a. Consolidates base defense plans into the overall battalion defensive plan.
 	
        b. Consolidates base ADC plans into the overall battalion ADC plan.
 	
        c. Prepares priority listing that identifies the support facilities that have the greatest impact on the current operation.
 	
        d. Conducts base assessment of each base and its defense measures to ensure compliance with the rear operation plan.
 	
        e. Forwards battalion sector's tactical situation and status to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
        f. Corrects all identified base defense weaknesses in coordination with base commanders.
 	
        g. Maintains current IPB as products are disseminated by higher HQ and supporting rear operations element.
 	
        h. Designates internal response force based on number of personnel, type weapons, and current mission of each base in the battalion area.
 	
        i. Establishes coordination with MP units and other available response forces to plan response to Level II or III threat using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
        j. Coordinates NBC defense operations with higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
        k. Provides input to the commander and XO on positioning newly arriving units in the battalion area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

3. S2/3 Section coordinates preengagement preparation measures.
 	
    a. Plots location(s) of threat force on the analog/digital situation map(s) as SPOTREPs are received.
 	
    b. Disseminates current threat size and location to all subordinate units using analog and digital communications.
 	
    c. Forwards all SPOTREPs to higher HQ and supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications.
 	
    d. Implements defense condition level consistent with threat size and equipment.
 	
    e. Directs redeployment of all isolated support teams and supply points to closest BCOC in coordination with the supporting rear operations element.
 	
    f. Directs preliminary loading of all nonessential equipment and supplies, and positioning of vehicles for immediate exit by all subordinate units.
 	
    g. Briefs commander and XO on current tactical situation to include redeployment recommendations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S2/3 Section

TASK: Direct Response to Threat Actions (63-1-4052) (<u>FM 10-27-3</u>, AR 380-19, AR 380-19-1, AR 530-1, FM 101-5, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-4)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy elements have been sighted in the battalion's AO. Reports indicate the threat potential at Level II or III. The BCOC is operational. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital or analog devices. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Bases in the cluster have reported Level I attacks. Subordinate elements are providing current SITREPs. Threat information is provided by the higher HQ staff element and the supporting rear operations element. SCPE is on hand. The commander has elected to locate outside the shelter and has appointed a liaison officer to coordinate C2 functions between himself and the staff. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The enemy is repelled and/or delayed until battalion is relieved by MP elements or a TCF. The battalion's pre-established degradation of support is maintained. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease rear operations activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section makes appropriate response determination. a. Verifies threat level(s). b. Identifies capability of base(s) being threatened. c. Verifies base(s) priority as established by the defense plan. 2. S2/3 Section reports threat location and size. a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using analog and/or digital communications. b. Maintains analog/digital map surveillance of enemy force as information is received in subordinate unit's SPOTREP.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Forwards SPOTREP to higher HQ staff element and/or supporting rear operations element using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		
d. Disseminates current threat information to all subordinate units using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		
3. S2/3 Section coordinates base cluster response.		
a. Maintains situational awareness at all times using appropriate BFACS.		
b. Maintains digital communications with all elements using appropriate BFACS.		
c. Establishes security level consistent with threat size and equipment.		
d. Forwards SITREP to higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element as situation changes.		
e. Reports current situation to subordinate units as soon as situation changes.		
f. Recalls isolated support elements to predetermined defensive positions within the base cluster.		
g. Assembles internal response forces at predesignated rally points as prescribed by defense plan.		
h. Coordinates internal response force commitment with the higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element.		
i. Directs internal response force maneuvers to delay and deny the enemy penetration into established lines.		
j. Coordinates MP, CAS, and preplanned indirect fire support with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element, as appropriate.		
k. Identifies projected degradation levels within the battalion in coordination with the higher HQ staff element and all major customer units.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
l. Forwards identified degradation levels to higher HQ staff element. m. Maintains current analog/digital situation maps showing current locations of all friendly and enemy forces. n. Coordinates additional security requirements for movement of support through affected areas with higher HQ staff element and supporting rear operations element. o. Coordinates threat NBC activities with higher HQ staff element section and/or supporting rear operations element. p. Makes recommendations to the commander on partial or total suspension of all support functions until threat is driven from the AO or the MPs or TCF relieves the units. q. Directs repositioning of units in base cluster(s) for better defensive position that is consistent with the tactical situation. r. Downgrades security level as the threat is driven from area or defeated. 4. S2/3 Section supervises reorganization of base cluster defense. a. Performs damage assessment of area of responsibility by reviewing SITREPs from cluster subelements. b. Directs cluster defense plan adjustments, as required. c. Coordinates base cluster resupply plan with the S4 Section, higher HQ S4 Section, and supporting rear operations element using appropriate analog and/or digital communications or BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S4 Section

TASK: Direct Area Damage Control Operations (63-1-4053) (<u>FM 10-27-3</u>, FM 100-14, FM 3-100.4, FM 3-19.30, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 5-103)

| **ITERATION** | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | (circle) |

| **COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT** | | | | T | P | U | (circle) |

CONDITIONS: Enemy attacks have caused destruction to units and facilities in the battalion's area. The battalion HQ has analog and/or digital communications with higher and lower HQ. The higher HQ OPORD with all annexes, status reports, maps, overlays, and other required documents has been forwarded to the commander's digital and/or analog device. The unit, higher, and lower TSOPs are available. Limited support operations are reinstated. Complete restoration of support operations is required for sustainment of combat operations. ADC teams are designated. The commander has established ADC priorities. Higher HQ provides limited assistance. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. The unit is subject to air, NBC, and Level I ground threat forces attack. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Restoration activities are conducted and additional requirements are coordinated IAW commander's priorities and guidance, OPORD, and TSOP. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors minimally decrease ADC activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
1. Command Section and S4 Section establish Control and Assessment CP.		
a. Identify personnel requirements for Control and Assessment CP.		
b. Identify established policies and procedures by reviewing the rear operations annex and the TSOP.		
c. Set up ADC situation maps.		
2. Command Section and S4 Section coordinate base cluster restoration activities using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		
a. Identify requirements and taskings by reviewing ADC plan and TSOP.		
b. Alert Control and Assessment Teams.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
c. Establish ADC communications to transmit all required communications.		
d. Coordinate ADC operations with higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element.		
e. Maintain ADC situation maps.		
f. Establish control of affected subordinate units.		
g. Calculate damage control effectiveness of subordinate units.		
h. Release operational subordinate units to commanders for continuance of support mission.		
i. Forward unit effectiveness reports to higher HQ S2/3 Section and supporting rear operations element.		
j. Provide ADC operational update to commander.		
k. Monitor environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		
3. Command Section and S4 Section direct recovery activities.		
a. Establish priorities for affected facilities.		
b. Task subordinate elements for rescue and decontamination teams, as required.		
c. Provide locations of decontamination sites to subordinate units.		
d. Identify locations of emergency food, clothing, water, and shelter.		
e. Coordinate emergency treatment and evacuation with the supporting medical element using appropriate BFACS.		
f. Monitors environmental stewardship protection program procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

4. Command Section and S4 Section coordinate additional support requirements.
 	
        a. Coordinate engineer support with supporting rear operations element.
 	
        b. Coordinate MP support with supporting rear operations element.
 	
        c. Coordinate EOD support with supporting rear operations element.
 	
        d. Coordinate labor support with supporting rear operations element.
 	
        e. Coordinate additional ADC requirements with higher HQ S2/3 Section using analog and/or digital communications or appropriate BFACS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS		
Task Number	**Task Title**	**References**
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 10-92M14-SM-TG
		STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Deployment Upon Receipt of a Warning Order (63-1-4873) (FM 100-17, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION   1   2   3   4   5   M   (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT   T   P   U   (circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher HQ is at a normal state of deployment readiness and receives a warning order to go to an increased deployability posture in preparation for overseas deployment. The SDO or 1SG has notified the commander. This task occurs concurrently with directing deployment alert activities. The movement plan, recall plan, RSOP, TSOP security plan, unit access rosters, and current maps are available. Higher HQ subordinate units are deploying as part of the higher HQ deployment. The higher HQ communicates with subordinate units by analog and/or digital means of communication, automation systems, and courier. Deployment planning activities are performed under all day or night environmental conditions, except NBC. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement plans are completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs deployment planning IAW higher HQ guidance.		
a. Identifies deployment mission requirements by reviewing the WARNO and appropriate CONPLAN.		
b. Briefs staff on deployment mission.		
c. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.		
d. Directs S2/3 to verify details of mission.		
e. Directs S2/3 to update the OPLANs.		
f. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' movement plans.		
g. Directs security officer to initiate security plan.		
h. Directs XO to prepare commander's briefing.		
i. Conducts commander's briefing.		
j. Verifies readiness status.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*2. XO coordinates staff planning.		
a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.		
b. Assigns staff responsibilities for preparing movement/ deployment plans.		
c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.		
d. Coordinates deployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.		
e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.		
f. Prepares commander's briefing.		
g. Identifies redeployment criteria.		
3. S2/3 Section analyzes mission.		
a. Identifies all specified and implied tasks in the WARNO.		
b. Identifies all documented policies and procedures.		
c. Coordinates mission parameters and details with higher HQ.		
d. Coordinates with S1 section for personnel analysis of mission.		
e. Coordinates with S4 section for logistics and movement analysis of mission.		
f. Verifies maps and overlays for current mission.		
g. Coordinates with security officer to incorporate risk management procedures into the OPLANs.		
h. Incorporates force protection measures into OPLANs.		
i. Briefs commander and staff on deployment mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

4. Staff Sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units.
 	
    a. Provides personnel readiness review.
 	
    b. Performs logistics readiness review.
 	
    c. Performs OPSEC readiness review.
 	
    d. Identifies readiness issues.
 	
    e. Provides recommendations to improve readiness.
 	
5. S4 Section validates movement plan.
 	
    a. Validates movement plans for all modes of transportation indicated in the WARNO.
 	
    b. Validates equipment status against MCSR.
 	
    c. Validates AUEL of subordinate units against unit property books.
 	
    d. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate unit and higher HQ movement plans.
 	
*6. Staff officers supervise staff actions.
 	
    a. Identify tasks that must be accomplished in order to deploy by reviewing the movement directive, RSOP, movement plan/order, OPLAN/CONPLANs, and commander's guidance.
 	
    b. Exchange pertinent information relevant to the deployment with the other staff sections.
 	
    c. Direct preparation of input to the S2/3 Section for the update of plans, orders, and commander's briefing, as required.
 	
    d. Identify section requirements for deployment verification checklist.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Battalion Headquarters
S1 Section
S2/3 Section
S4 Section

TASK: Plan Battalion Redeployment (63-1-4874) (<u>FM 100-17</u>, FM 101-5, FM 55-65)

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 M (circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT T P U (circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion receives a WARNO to deploy to home station. The battalion and subordinate units are located in the TAA. All personnel are present or accounted for, weapons and sensitive equipment have been secured, and inventories of vehicles, equipment, and supplies have been conducted. Personnel and equipment status reports are being received from subordinate units. The battalion staff continuously receives messages from the appropriate higher HQ and subordinate units by analog and/or digital communications, automation systems, and courier. The readiness RSOP and deployment WARNO are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Redeployment Movement Plan is completed IAW governing regulations and higher HQ directions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
*1. Commander directs redeployment planning.		
a. Provides planning guidance to staff and subordinate units.		
b. Directs S2/3 to prepare OPORD.		
c. Directs S2/3 to validate subordinate units' Movement Plans.		
d. Directs Security Officer to update Security Plan.		
e. Directs S1 to verify SRP activities.		
*2. Staff officers analyze mission.		
a. Identify tasks in the WARNO.		
b. Identify documented policies and procedures.		
c. Coordinate mission parameters and details with higher HQ.		
d. Coordinate with the S1 Section for personnel analysis of mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO
e. Coordinate with the S4 Section for logistics and movement analysis of mission.		
f. Prepare battalion OPORD.		
g. Verify redeployment maps and overlays.		
h. Brief commander on redeployment mission.		
*3. XO coordinates staff planning.		
a. Implements commander's directives in staff planning and policy making.		
b. Assigns staff responsibilities for updating redeployment plans.		
c. Monitors all staff actions for conformity to commander's guidance.		
d. Coordinates redeployment mission with subordinate unit commanders.		
e. Consolidates input from staff sections for commander's briefing.		
4. Staff sections conduct readiness review of subordinate units.		
a. Provide personnel readiness review.		
b. Perform logistics readiness review.		
c. Perform OPSEC readiness review.		
d. Identify readiness issues.		
e. Make recommendations to bring unit to designated readiness level.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO GO

5. S4 Section validates deployment plans.
 	
        a. Validates equipment status.
 	
        b. Validates AUEL for subordinate units.
 	
        c. Coordinates for S2/3 review of subordinate units and battalion redeployment movement plans.
 	
*6. Staff officers supervise staff sections.
 	
        a. Direct preparation of redeployment plans and orders.
 	
        b. Direct preparation of draft input for commander's brief.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO/NO GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATION

6-1. GENERAL. An external evaluation is designed to provide the unit commander and his higher HQ with an evaluation of the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Feedback from an external evaluation is also used as a key input for the planning and development of future unit training activities. The unit's METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs of this ARTEP MTP (Chapter 5), provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation. An external evaluation is usually planned, administered, and evaluated by the battalion. The frequency of such evaluations will be prescribed at the discretion of the unit's chain of command.

6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION. A successful evaluation depends on proper preparation, including planning, coordination, and where applicable, a rehearsal or O/C talk-through of the major exercise events. The written evaluation plan must contain the pertinent evaluation details.

     a. Preparing the Evaluation Instrument. The sample evaluation scenario for the unit is provided in Table 6-1. Figure 6-1, page 6-4, is a graphic representation of the scenario.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED
1.	Administrative preparation	Before start time

Day 1

2.	Deployment alert notification	30 min
3.	Initiate recall plan	30 min
4.	Perform personnel accountability activities	2 hr
5.	Perform predeployment activities	5 hr
6.	AAR	1 hr
7.	Movement to the port of embarkation	1 hr 30 min
8.	AAR	1 hr
9.	Conduct theater reception operations	2 hr
10.	Perform theater onward activities	2 hr
11.	AAR	1 hr

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED

Day 2

12.	Warning notice received	10 min
13.	Analyze mission	30 min
14.	Prepare movement plan	1hr 45 min
*15.	Prepare Occupation plan	40 min
*16.	Provide input to higher HQ	1hr
17.	Coordinate additional requirement	20 min
18.	Conduct route reconnaissance	1 hr
*19.	Prepare vehicles and equipment	55 min
*20.	Dismantle current operating site	55 min
21.	Organize march elements	20 min
22.	Brief march unit leaders	15 min
23.	Conduct road march	45 min
24.	Cross contaminated area	45 min
25.	Defend convoy	40 min
26.	Continue road march	45 min
27.	Cross RP	15 min
28.	AAR	1 hr
29.	Adv/quartering party activities	1 hr
30.	Occupy new operating site	30 min
31.	Set up defense	1 hr
*32.	Set up LOC	30 min
33.	NBC defense preparations	30 min
*34.	AAR	1 hr
35.	Set up admin and bivouac area	30 min

Day 3

36.	Provide HQ life support operations	8 hr
* 37.	Air and level I ground attack	30 min
* 38.	Respond to NBC activities	40 min
* 39.	Terrorist activities	30 min
40.	Relieved by TCP	40 min
41.	Conduct ADC	2 hrs
42.	AAR	1 hr

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario (continued)

SEQUENCE	EVENTS	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED

<u>Day 4</u>

43.	Redeployment Notification	30 min
44.	Reconstitution for movement	3 hr
45.	Movement to redeployment assembly areas	1 hr
46.	Movement to port of embarkation	1 hr
47.	Reception activities of debarkation	2 hr
48.	Onward movement from port of debarkation	1 hr
49.	Final AAR	2 hr
	Total Time:	79 hr 30 min

* Events occur simultaneously
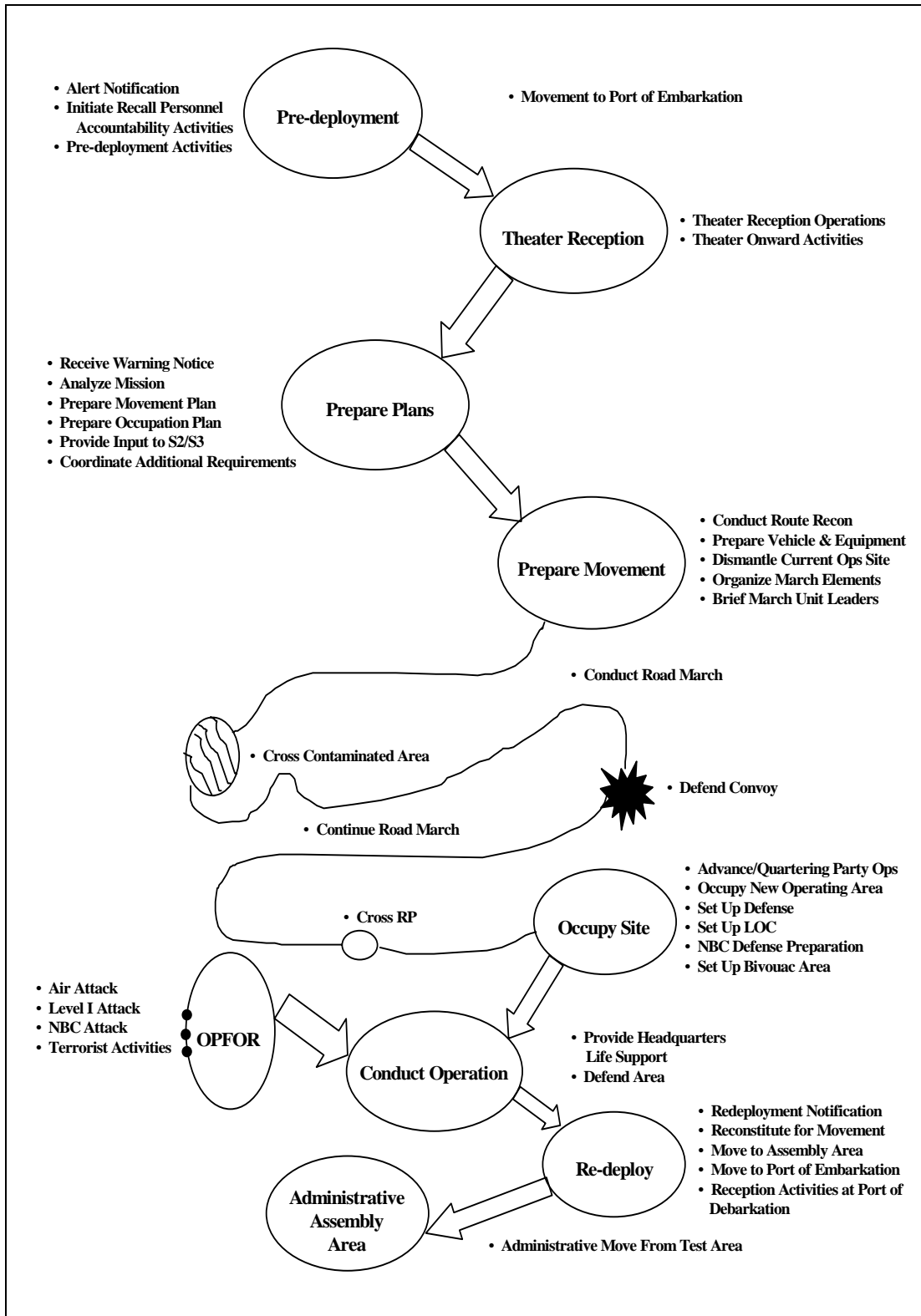
Figure 6-1. Example of Graphic Scenario

(1) Identify the missions for evaluating each echelon or element using Table 2-1. Record the selected missions in the UPW, Figure 6-2.

No.	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
Unit: _____					Date: _____	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
*If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form						

Figure 6-2. Example Unit Proficiency Worksheet

(2) List each mission on a task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).

TASK SUMMARY SHEET			
TASK TITLES	**T&EO NUMBER**	**EVALUATION**	
		GO	**NO GO**

Observer/Controller's Signature_____

NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. Observer/Controller's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-3. Example Unit Task Summary Sheet

(3) Select the task for the evaluation of every mission. List the selection tasks on the task summary sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order they logically occur in the detailed scenario. Group the selected missions and tasks in parts for continuous operations (see Table 6-1, Sample Evaluation Scenario). Parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in process AAR's.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. Resource requirements and planning considerations are identified as the evaluation is expanded and developed. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating unit will prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Example Consolidated Support Requirements

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56 mm (Blank)	150 rds/per wpn
7.62 mm (Blank)	100 rds/per wpn
Smoke Grenades	2/per unit/OPFOR
Simulator, Arty.	6/OPFOR
Blank Adapters	1/per wpn
MILES	one set per soldier/equipment
CS Grenades	3/OPFOR

EQUIPMENT

All organic equipment to include TOE and CTA items authorized.

FUEL

Use OPLOGPLN '98 to calculate fuel requirements.

NBC EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY
AN/PDR-T1 (Radiation Survey Set)	1 per unit
M72A2 Kit: Chemical Stimulant	1 each

OTHER

Field rations	as required
War Wound Moulage Set	1 each
Aircraft for simulated air attacks	1 each
M256 Chemical Detector Kit (Training)	1 each

NOTE: The consolidated support requirements outlined for this FTX are suggestions only. Local policies or constraints may not allow for provisioning of all the items in this table.

        c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site. Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. For this evaluation an area of _____ meters X _____ meters was selected. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

        d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation because it greatly influences the outcome of the battle. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

        (1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. This method may be difficult to support due to the amount of required resources.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the O/Cs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the O/C may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25-series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-3. SELECTING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS.

a. O/Cs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. Senior O/C should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are minimum rank and experience for O/C's:

(1) Company O/C will be a officer with company command experience.

(2) Platoon or section O/C's will be an LT or NCO with platoon or selection experience.

(3) Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the O/C's.

6-4. TRAINING THE OBSERVER/CONTROLLERS. O/C's standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following functional areas.

a. Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. O/C's must thoroughly understand and correctly implement the evaluation.

b. MILES. Each O/C, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functioning before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement.

(2) O/C duties and responsibilities.

(3) Communication system.

(4) Evaluation data collection plan.

6-5. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION.

  a. The evaluating HQ develops the data recording instruments for the O/C's. The Unit Data Sheet (Figure 6-4, page 6-10) documents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet (Figure 6-5, page 6-11) documents weather information that helps observe missions under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report (Figure 6-6, page 6-12) documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

  b. The senior O/C has the overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on his own finding and his subordinate O/C's input. Subordinate O/C's use the task evaluation criteria (T&EO from Chapter 5 and the task summary sheets), to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior O/C compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander . Deviations from the task standard assessed by the company O/C may be addressed in the senior O/C comments portion of the UPW.

6-6. SELECTING AND TRAINING THE OPFOR. The selection and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influence the condition under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent who realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapon, and skill.

  a. Selection. Any qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

  b. Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

    (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.

    (2) Rules of engagement.

    (3) Threat small unit tactics

    (4) Training scenarios.

    (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.

    (6) Safety.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. UNIT DESIGNATION _____ **DATE:**_____						
2. UNIT LEADERS: (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	**RANK**	**TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)**				
CMDR	CPT/LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
XO	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
PLT LDR	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
PLT SGT	SFC/SSG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
SEC LDR	SSG/SGT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	OVER 19
3. UNIT STRENGTH (excluding leaders): _____						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (major items): _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____						
5. COMMENTS: _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____						
EVALUATOR SIGNATURE: _____						

Figure 6-4. Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Clear   Partly Cloudy   Hazy   Raining   Snowing   Fog Other: Temperature
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Dry   Wet   Ice   Snow Other:
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description) Day   Night Moon Phase   ¼   ½   ¾   Full Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:
4. TERRAIN (Circle appropriate description) Flat   Rolling   Mountainous   Jungle   Desert   Urban   Arctic Other: Top Soil: Sandy   Rocky   Clay   Other: Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:
5. REMARKS:

Figure 6-5. Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title Or Task Number	Date/Time Of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

Figure 6-6. Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

c. OPFOR Strength.

(1) *Offense.* Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) *Defense.* The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three to one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-7. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION. An evaluation is divided into three distinct areas. Each area requires a different degree of preparation and coordination.

a. Pre-evaluation.

(1) The senior O/C and all other O/C's must recon the evaluation area to know the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operation.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to control the exercise. An order is prepared for each mission in the evaluation scenario. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STX's contained in Chapter 4.

(3) Unit preparatory activities include installation and troubleshooting of MILES equipment, loading vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistics and administrative actions, as required.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the unit is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) In this evaluation scenario, the unit is issued a movement order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. The O/Cs should make an equipment functions check after the unit occupies the assembly area and after the unit leaders have issued their instructions.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways. First , it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 in the OPORD or FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the team commander (simulated by the senior O/C for this evaluation) on the team net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observes. Only the senior O/C has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other O/Cs do not speak to, aid, advice, and point out positions or in any way

to influence the unit's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue of emergency. O/Cs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior O/C issues the OPORD and movement order, the unit commander executes the event and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begins with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior O/C terminates a part when the unit has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the part cannot be completed. The O/C must record the reason for the termination in the margin of the O/C's Task Summary Sheets and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, the completion of each event or action is indicated by "conducting sustain operations." During this period, the senior O/C will direct the unit to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, the O/C must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment and record "kill" codes and reset equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information is reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the unit to resolve questions. Afterwards, the senior O/C directs the unit to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) The O/Cs should follow these guidelines.

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firing and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. O/Cs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit's location.

(f) Inform OPFOR controllers of the unit's location, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR action to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission.

c. Post Evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the unit moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions.

(1) The unit O/C debriefs subordinate O/Cs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The unit O/C must complete the task summary sheets.

(3) The unit O/C must turn in all completed O/C packets (with the O/C scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The unit O/C must conduct an AAR of the unit's performance.

(5) Each element O/C should conduct an AAR of his elements performance.

6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER ACTION REVIEW.

a. General. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning.

b. Feedback. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base' for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member, which becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternate courses of action.

c. Preparing the AAR. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) *Review training orders and objectives.* Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The O/C should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that he can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) *Observe the exercise.* This is an active process. The emphasis is on those actions that make the difference between the unit's success or failure. The O/C does not need to remain close to the unit leader, since more can be seen from higher ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route of march. Since unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the O/C must be present when the commander issues the order. The O/C should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events include.

(a) Conducting a road march.

(b) Crossing a radiological contaminated area.

(c) Performing unit supply operations.

(d) Responding to an NBC attack.

(3) *Select the site and assemble the participants.* After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where the majority of action occurred, where most of the

critical events tool place (normally where the OPFOR was position), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually, the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

(4) ***Debrief the O/Cs.*** While the units are moving to the selected site, the O/Cs should be debriefed. The senior O/C must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's event in the order in which they occurred.

(5) ***Review the events.*** After the senior O/C has an understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the events which are ranked in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and contributions to the exercise outcome. He selects the events that can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. Conducting the AAR. Conducting the AAR requires the following five steps.

(1) ***Organize the participants.*** When the O/C and AAR leader assembles the participants, he groups them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's O/C is with the element for which he is responsible.

(2) ***State the training objectives.*** The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. He states any additional teaching points that he intends to cover during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points in order to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) ***Lead the discussion.*** The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and as the AAR proceeds, have the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should:

(a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.

(b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.

(c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.

(d) Suggest the players discuss not only what happen, but how it happened and how it could be done better.

(e) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.

(f) Relate events to subsequent results.

(g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(h) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and how to show routes, phase line, and objectives.

(i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical actions.

(4) *Review the sequence.* The AAR leader reviews the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents.

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures.

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level.

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified and what was done to overcome it.

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) *Summarize key points.* The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, he can have a private conversation with the unit commander regarding his strengths and weaknesses, and what he can do to improve his performance and that of his unit. A good AAR leader does the following.

(a) Maintain order and discipline.

(b) Reviews the training objectives.

(c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the unit could have done them better. During the discussion, the leader avoids a detail examination of events not directly related to the training objective.

(d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.

(f) Involves participants in the discussion.

(g) Clearly and concisely gives summary and new training objectives.

(h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models.

e. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A

COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

A-1. PURPOSE. This appendix provides, as part of the CATS, the recommended strategy for training the unit. This appendix has three parts. The first part describes CATS and explains how CATS fits into the training planning process as described in FM 25-101, Battle Focused Training. The second part explains how to read the strategies, and the third part explains how to integrate CATS into long-range and near-range planning processes.

Section I. CATS and the Training Planning Process

A-2. UNIT TRAINING. FM 25-101 describes a three-step process based on the unit METL and ending in training execution. Figure A-1 is a graphic representation of the process.
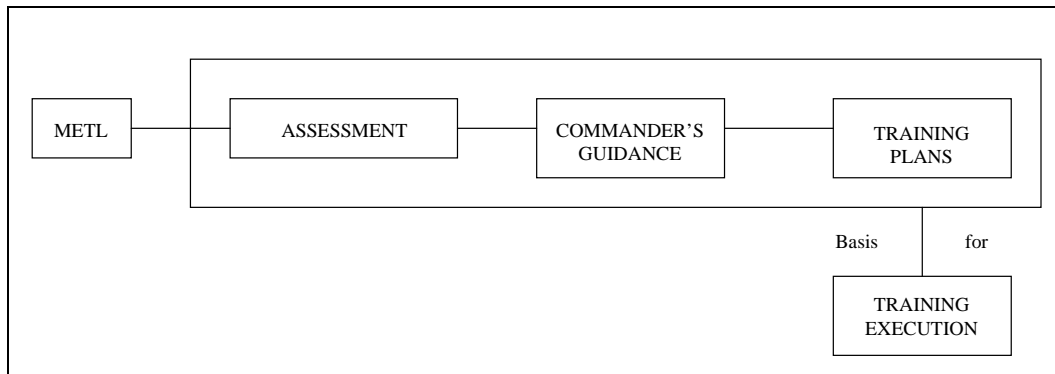
Figure A-1. Training Planning Process

CATS does not replace this process. It is a training tool that enhances the commander's ability to use the training planning process to manage his training and to optimize the use of scarce training resources. CATS unit strategies describe recommended training events and the event frequency. Your unit may train all or some of these events. Your training frequency may or may not match that in the CATS strategy. Whatever a unit's training requirements, CATS provides a framework for use in making decisions on the training conducted. The training strategy outlined in CATS is designed to help the commander at all levels develop and execute a more efficient training program. Any given strategy addresses all units Army-wide of the same TOE. The specific makeup of the unit's training program is dependent upon its METL, guidance from higher HQ, and the resources available at the installation or training environment. It is descriptive in nature and intended to be used as a guide for the commander.

        a. CATS is the Army's training strategy that integrates combined arms training for heavy, light, and special operations forces, the active and reserve components, in the unit and institution environments. It provides a direction to guide Army training and identifies the resources required to support that training. It enables the Army to identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources.

b. CATS evolved from the need for more efficient training based on expected resource constraints. At US Army level, CATS gives the rationale for acquiring training resources through the development of unit and institutional training strategies. The strategies provide recommended training frequencies and identify the training resources needed to support the strategy.

c. The information in this paragraph explains the terms listed in Figure A-1. For information on the training planning process, see FM 25-101.

(1) Mission Essential Task List is an unconstrained, unprioritized statement of the tasks required to complete the wartime mission. It is a source of training planning activities.

(2) Assessment is the beginning of the training planning process. It is the commander's evaluation of the unit's training level on the METL.

(3) Commander's Guidance consists of long-range planning calendars CTG issued to the unit from COSCOM. It serves to focus the training efforts of the unit in accordance with the COSCOM commander's priorities. The COSCOM, in turn, issues CTG for the unit.

(4) Training Plans are a collection of schedules and other supporting documents that carry out the commander's guidance.

(5) Training Execution is the actual performance of the training schedule in the training plans portion of the training planning process.

d. The information in this paragraph explains how to apply CATS to the training process. Figure A-2 is a graphic representation of the process.
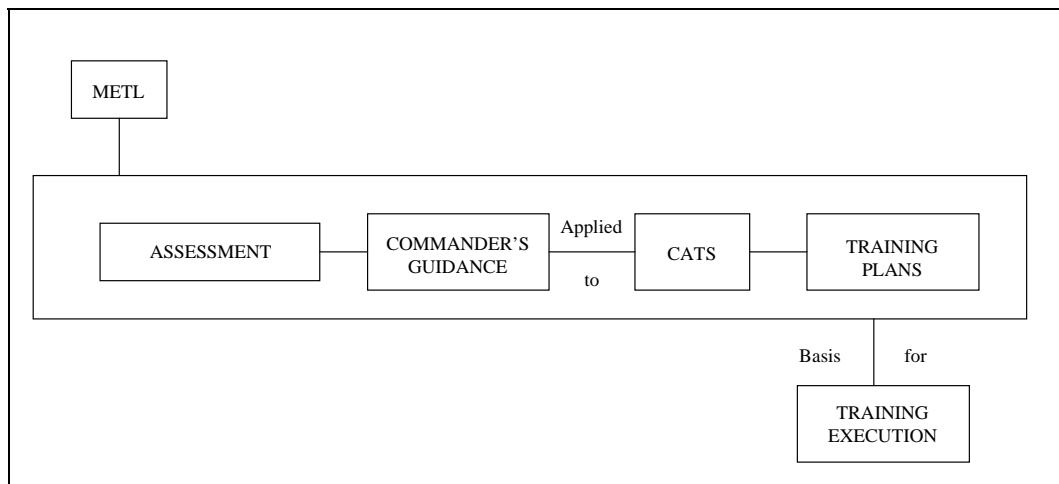
Figure A-2. Training Planning Process (CATS)

(1) The commander determines the exact events and tasks to be trained based on his METL and guidance from higher HQ.

(a) The unit trains tasks during events established in FM 25-100, FM 25-101, and CATS.

(b) The unit trains its METL by training soldiers in their wartime tasks. The unit applies CATS to its training plans by applying the training events, frequencies, and critical gates contained in strategies to the CTG in developing their training plans. The commander uses the critical gates identified in the strategies to ensure that basic tasks are trained prior to moving on to training more complex or resource-intensive tasks. The performance of training gate tasks are always evaluated by the commander and serve as the basis of additional training efforts. For example, a TEWT should be used to train METL tasks prior to conducting a complex and resource-intensive event like an CFX. The collective training tasks trained in the unit are evaluated by the commander and serve as a basis for additional TEWT training or another TEWT prior to the execution of an CFX.

(c) TADSS-based training uses a mix of TADSS and has live fire/field training. The strategies show those TADSS within the Army system or year projected for fielding. The TADSS may not be available at your installation or training environment.

(2) The strategies can be viewed as training plans for generic type units. The strategy for the unit is based on the TOE for the Movement Control Center. It does not address environmental factors that apply to specific units (such as MTOE, mission, particular training weaknesses and strengths, or the higher commander's guidance).

(3) By inserting an extra step into the training planning process, commanders apply the components of their unit CATS strategy to their particular training programs and environments. Commanders evaluate and apply the information contained in the strategies to their training environments. The optimal frequencies identified in the strategies may have to be adjusted based upon a unit's training status or its resourcing.

Section II. Strategy Organization and Interpretation

A-3. UNIT TRAINING STRATEGIES. This portion of the appendix explains and how to use the strategy organization. The unit training portion of CATS is a series of separately generated training strategies. These strategies describe the events, frequencies, and resources recommended to train to standard. As part of the unit training strategy development process, TRADOC established a standard format to depict unit training strategies. The unit training strategy is a descriptive strategy for training and sustaining soldier and collective task proficiency. The tasks to be trained at a particular unit will be based on the unit's METL. The unit strategy in this appendix covers all transportation units. The unit training strategies have three major components: Maneuver, Gunnery, and Soldier.

a. The Maneuver training strategy is descriptive. It provides recommended training frequencies for collective training events in a unit. The events come from FM 25-100 and FM 25-101. It helps a unit maintain MTP standards and depicts the resources required to support training events.

b. The Gunnery Component has individual/crew-served weapons strategies that the Infantry School developed. These strategies also can be found in DA Pam 350-38 and DA Pam 350-39 or appropriate weapons FMs.

c. The Soldier Component is a descriptive strategy for training individual soldier skills. It lists the resources required to support soldier training and links with and supports a collective training strategy.

A-4. ELEMENTS OF THE UNIT STRATEGIES. The unit training strategies are in matrix formats. The matrix lists unit size level, training events, or training exercises, training event frequencies for both AC and RC, critical gates, and training resources.

a. Training levels are units, training elements, or echelons (such as individual through corps) that execute specific training events.

b. Training events are types of collective training exercises identified in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101. Training events identify the recommended exercises that units should conduct to train to MTP standard. Units normally conduct events in a progressive and sequential manner. For example: a TEWT should be conducted before conducting an CFX; a CPX should be conducted before conducting an FTX.

c. Training event frequencies are the suggested number of times that an event should be trained during a training cycle to attain or maintain MTP standards. AC units use an annual cycle and RC units conduct training on a 4-year cycle.

d. A critical gate is a training event that must be done and evaluated before moving onto a more complex, resource-intensive, or hazardous event. MACOM or field commanders may direct performance of critical gate training tasks to an established standard prior to performing more complex or resource-intensive tasks.

e. The unit training strategies identify the resources that will be used to support each training event. These resources are:

- OPTEMPO.
- Ammunition.
- TADSS.
- Training Land.
- Training Ranges.

The resources listed in the strategies represent those that have been available since the end of FY 94.

(1) OPTEMPO figures reflect the annual operating miles/hour required for the base vehicle or system for a particular unit, per event. The OPTEMPO figures come from the BLTM manual. When no BLTM was available, an estimated OPTEMPO required to support all the annual iterations of that training event was developed by the proponents.

(2) Ammunition figures reflect the ammunition required to support training events and come from DA Pam 350-38. The maneuver/collective strategies reflect blank ammunition

requirements. Live ammunition appears on the Gunnery strategies. Pyrotechnics appear on the maneuver/collective component.

(3) TADSS are training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations that support specific training events. TADSS listed are those in the system, nonsystem TADSS that are fielded, and those that were fielded by the end of FY 94. In this strategy, BBS is identified as a primary TADSS to support battalion staff and headquarters company/unit's CPX training.

(4) Training Land is a resource category that will list the recommended training land in kilometers by event to conduct unit training. The reference is TC 25-1. The actual amount of training land needed by a particular unit will be determined by METT-T and the characteristics or condition of the training land available to the unit.

(5) Training Range is a resource requirement that supports weapons training events. The information comes from TC 25-8.

A-5. GUIDE TO UNIT STRATEGIES. This section provides a guide to reading the collection, gunnery, and soldier components.

a. We will use the Movement Control Agency/Movements Control Center (Corps).

(1) The top of the maneuver strategy lists the major training events. The order in which the events appear, from left to right, is not prescriptive. The events do follow a logical progression of how a unit might process through an annual training cycle. Explanations of these events are in FM 25-101.

(2) On the left side of the maneuver strategy is the column titled levels. This column lists the units covered by the strategy. The strategy in this appendix addresses the Movements Control Center (Corps). There is a separate row for AC and RC units. Each column depicts the recommended frequency that a unit should conduct a specific training event within a year. For example, look at the training event, STAFFEX. Here, the recommended frequency for an AC unit to conduct a STAFFEX is four times a year.

b. The M16 A1/A2 matrix will be used for the gunnery/weapon strategy example.

NOTE: Gunnery/weapon training strategies in the MTP cover only unit-specific weapon systems. Some units will not have specific gunnery/weapon strategies.

(1) Gunnery/weapon training strategies were developed by TRADOC Schools that the STRAC manual identifies as the weapon's proponent. Because the Infantry branch is the proponent for the M16, the Infantry School developed this strategy, and it applies to all branches.

(2) Training events are in the top position of the gunnery/weapon training strategy. The levels or echelons that will train these tasks are on the left. On the M16 strategy, qualification for the M16 is conducted at the soldier level. The critical gates to be completed, before M16 qualification, are in FM 23-9. The unit commander will ensure that the soldier trains those requirements before moving on to qualification.

(3) Frequency depicts how often the tasks listed in the upper part of the strategy should be conducted annually. Per guidance provided in the STRAC manual, the frequency block

for the M16 has two categories. Category I applies to soldiers with either MOSs 11B or 11M (assigned to an infantry rifle squad) or MOSs 19D or 11B (assigned to a scout squad or long-range surveillance unit). Category II applies to all combat arms, combat support, and combat service support soldiers not assigned to rifle or infantry squads.

(4) These two categories are subdivided by TRC IAW the STRAC manual. They are: TRC A = AC units; TRC L = Light Infantry, Air Assault, and Airborne Units; TRC S = Special Reaction Teams (AC, MP Teams); TRC C = RC Units; TRC D = USAR Training Division, Reception Stations, and Separate Training Brigades; and NGB Training Cadre.

(5) Training categories and training readiness conditions provide an all-encompassing set of training frequencies. The M16 strategy recommends that a light infantry squad conduct three live fire exercises per year. The RC squads have no recommended frequency.

(6) OPTEMPO is not identified for M16 training.

(7) Figures for ammunition are per DA Pam 350-38 (STRAC). Qualification with the M16 requires 160 rounds of ball and 20 rounds of tracer ammunition per weapon per year.

c. The final component is the soldier strategy.

(1) The soldier strategy focuses on training common skills in a particular CMF or can be focused on a single MOS.

(2) Training events selected for the 88N are across the top of the strategy. The left column shows the recommended annual event frequency. The letter "A" represents AC soldiers. The letter "R" represents RC soldiers. Therefore, in this example, the recommendation is for daily physical training for the AC 88N and monthly for the RC soldier.

Section III. Integration of CATS in the Planning Process

A-6. INTEGRATING CATS INTO PLANNING PROCESS. This portion of the appendix explains how to integrate CATS into the planning process. It focuses on long-range planning conducted at the headquarters. To understand how CATS fits into this process, a brief summary of Chapter 3 (Planning) from FM 25-101 has been provided as follows:

3-2. The Planning Process:

a. Long-Range Planning.

(1) Assessment. Assessment is the start of the long-range planning process. Using their evaluations, the input of subordinate leaders and the results of training evaluations, commanders assess their unit's training level on METL tasks. The assessment serves as the basis for the commander's training strategy for sustainment and improvement training. Commanders at all levels do this assessment function. An integral part of the assessment is the identification of required training resources and shortfalls. The commander also must synchronize the actions of supporting units and agencies to ensure proper training execution.

(2) In creating their training strategy, commanders ensure that training:

(a) Is METL focused.

(b) Incorporates combined arms.

(c) Identifies who, when, and where to train.

(d) Has a logical sequence of execution.

(e) Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.

(f) Determines the frequencies of a given task.

(g) Coordinates all events.

(h) Matches resources to requirements.

The strategy that meets these requirements results in the commander's training guidance.

(3) Senior commanders provide subordinate commanders with long-range training calendars, the commander's training guidance, resources to train, and protection from training distorters. Commanders often provide recommended training events frequency.

b. Short-range Planning. The guidance that results from the long-range planning process is refined by the short-range planning process. Subordinate commanders use this guidance to create their training calendars. Guidance on the short-range training process can be found in the CATS appendix in the unit's MTP.

3-3. CATS and the Planning Process. CATS serves the commander as a training management and training resource identification tool. As a training management tool, it allows the commander to more efficiently manage his training program, with limited resource availability. As a training resource identification tool, it identifies the resources within the Army's inventory to conduct training. Depending on your location, the availability of those resources will vary.

a. Long-range Planning.

(1) Assessment.

(2) The CATS strategy.

(a) Is METL focused.

(b) Incorporates combined arms.

(c) Identifies who, when, and where to train.

(d) Has a logical sequence of execution.

(e) Identifies the type of exercise to be trained.

(f) Determines the frequencies of a given task.

(g) Coordinates all events.

(h) Matches resources to requirements.

(3) CATS provides a convenient vehicle for the transmission of the commander's guidance. It serves as the basis for the long-range calendar. It provides subordinate commanders with recommended frequencies of training events.

(4) EXECUTION. The following example shows how CATS could fit into the long-range training process.

(a) The Unit Maneuver Training Strategy lists the recommended frequencies for required annual training events. In particular, for the STAFFEX, it lists four iterations. The optimal training frequency is for the staff to train this event four times in a given year, one STAFFEX per quarter.

(b) Naturally, the training year may not support such a neat breakdown of training events. CATS gives you the flexibility to adjust the events to meet your particular requirements. A key point here is the idea of critical gates. As you can see, an STX is a critical gate for an FTX. You should conduct an event that is a critical gate before conducting the more complex task. Gates serve to ensure that basic tasks essential to the successful performance of complex tasks are trained and evaluated prior to the performance of complex tasks. Critical gates also serve as a type of preview or "rehearsal" for a follow-on training event.

(c) Assume that your commander has identified staff operations as a particular weakness in the unit. The commander decides that he wants to run staff exercises twice a quarter to train the staff.

(d) Using the guidance, you simply go to your strategy and substitute 8 for 4. If the frequencies for the other events are acceptable, you now have a complete commander's strategy. In this manner, a CATS-based strategy is tailored to meet a commander's assessment and training needs.

b. Short-range Planning. The application of CATS Movement Control Center's unit training strategies to unit short-range planning and the unit quarterly training calendar is shown in the following.

Recommended Movement Control Center (Corps) Calendar Using CATS Maneuver Strategy.

WEEK 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 4	STAFFEX (2)

NOTES:

1.   The collective tasks trained during the weekly Cell/Staff/ Section training periods support unit METL tasks and are trained according to the commander's assessment and his priorities for staff training outlined in the CTG. Soldier training tasks trained during this month are to be trained during the weekly staff training sessions or the quarterly STAFFEX.

2.   Performance of the STAFFEX substitutes for Cell/Staff/Section Training in week four (4).

    2D MONTH

WEEK 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 2	Cell/Staff/Section Training (1)
WEEK 3	CPX (2)
WEEK 4	Cell/Staff/Section Training (3)

NOTES:

1.   Training during these weekly periods concentrated on staff METL tasks identified as priority in the CTG. Training time here could also be spent training tasks evaluated as NO-GO during the first month's training period. Training exercises such as STX or TOCEX can be used to drive training during these periods. STXs and TOCEXs can also be used to enhance staff coordination.

2.   Performance of the CPX substitutes for performance of the STAFFEX that could be conducted here. Commanders may have to modify or extend the training period of the CPX to include training tasks that would have been normally performed in the STAFFEX.

3.   Tasks trained here can be tasks rated as NO-GO during the previous week's CPX.

    3D MONTH

WEEK 1	Cell/Staff/Section Training
WEEK 2	TEWT (1)
WEEK 3	Cell/Staff/Section Training
WEEK 4	CPX (2)

NOTES:

1.   This TEWT substitutes for performance of the Cell/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed this week. Ideally, the TEWTs discussion points and learning objectives would be developed to support/reinforce collective tasks trained in the previous month's Cell/Staff/Section, STAFFEX, or CPX training periods. The commander may also structure the TEWT to train staff coordination and integration tasks as key for the upcoming CPX.

2.   Substitutes for performance of the Cell/Staff/Section training that would normally be performed during the month.

As seen in the above, the commander structures his training program using recommended CATS training events, frequencies, and critical gates to support METL training. Weekly or monthly

training events can be conducted independently or integrated into other collective training exercises.

In scheduling training, the commander should take maximum advantage of higher HQ-directed events to accomplish his recommended CATS training events.

      c. <u>Horizontal and Vertical Integration</u>. In executing this training strategy, the commander vertically integrates his training requirements with the COSCOM's training requirements as identified in COSCOM training directives or the COSCOM's CTG. The unit's training strategy is also horizontally integrated with supporting commands (such as COSCOM and TAMCA) to ensure that combined arms training is effected.

APPENDIX B

BATTLEFIELD OPERATING SYSTEMS

Battlefield Operating Systems are the major functions performed by the force on the battlefield to successfully execute Army operations (battles and engagements) in order to accomplish military objectives directed by the operational commander. Under each BOS are the collective tasks used for unit training. The BOS includes the following functional areas: develop intelligence, deploy/conduct maneuver, protect the force, perform CSS and sustainment, and exercise command and control. Each of these functions is described below.

B-1. DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE. The develop intelligence task area is the activity to generate knowledge of and products portraying the enemy and environment features required by a commander in planning and conducting operations. It is derived from an analysis of information on the enemy's capabilities, intentions, vulnerabilities, and the environment. This includes the development of tactical intelligence requirements, the planning of collection activities, the collection of relevant information, the processing of that information to include the development of targeting information, and the preparation and dissemination of intelligence.

B-2. DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER. The deploy/conduct maneuver task area is the movement of combat forces to achieve a position of advantage with respect to enemy forces. This task area includes the employment of forces on the battlefield in combination with direct fire or fire potential. Indirect fires are included under the "Employ Fires" task area. It also includes the conduct of tactical movement of all types of units, mobility operations, counter-mobility operations, and tactical actions associated with force protection.

B-3. PROTECT THE FORCE. The protect the force task area is the protection of the tactical force's fighting potential so it can be applied at the appropriate time and place. It includes those measures the force takes to remain viable and functional by protecting itself from the effects of (or recovery from) enemy activities. Those active and passive measures encompass the following:

      a. Conduct air/missile defense.

      b. Protect against enemy hazards within the AO.

      c. Conduct local security operations.

      d. Conduct defensive information operations.

B-4. PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT. The perform CSS and sustainment task area is the support and service provided to sustain forces in an area of operations during war and during stability operations and support operations. This tactical task area involves the provision of supply, maintenance, transportation, CHS, personnel, legal, finance, religious, public affairs, contracting, distribution management, and field and other service support (such as general engineering support) required to sustain an operating force in an area of operations that may be joint, multinational, interagency, or a combination of these forces. Combat service support may be required to support contractors, civilians (such as refugees and disaster victims), or members of other governmental and non-governmental agencies. It includes civil-military operations.

B-5. EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL. The exercise C2 task area is the exercise and direction by a properly designated commander over assigned and available forces in the accomplishment of the mission. C2 tasks are performed through an arrangement of personnel, information management, procedures, and equipment and facilities employed by a commander in planning, preparing for, executing, and assessing the conduct of operations to accomplish the mission. It includes the acquisition and management of information, the maintenance of situational understanding, the conduct of situational estimates to determine actions, applying risk management, and the direction and leading of subordinate forces.

GLOSSARY

AA	assembly area
AACG	arrival airfield control group
AAR	after action review
AC	active component
ACS	Army Community Service
ADC	area damage control
ADP	automatic data processing
AER	Army Emergency Relief
AG	Adjutant General
ALOC	Areas and Logistics Operations Center
AM	amplitude modulated
AO	area of operations
AOR	area of responsibility
APOD	aerial port of debarkation
APOE	aerial port of embarkation
AR	Army regulation
ARC	Army Red Cross
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
Arty	artillery
A/SPOE	aerial/sea port of embarkation
ASAS	All Source Analysis System
ASR	alternate supply route
ATTN	attention
ATWESS	antitank weapon system simulator
AUEL	automated unit equipment list
BBS	battalion/brigade simulation
BCOC	base cluster operations center
BF	battle fatigue
BFACS	Battlefield Functional Area Control System
BLTM	Battalion Level Training Model
BOS	Battlefield Operating Systems
C2	command and control
CAS	close air support
CATS	combined arms training strategy
CCIR	Command Critical Intelligence Requirements
Cdr	commander
CFX	command field exercise
CHS	combat health support
CINC	commander in chief
CMCB	Corps Movement Control Battalion
CMDR	commander
CMO	civil-military operations
CO	commanding officer
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMSEC	communications security
CONPLAN	contingency plan
CONUS	continental United States

COOP	contingency/continuity of operations plans
COSCOM	Corps Support Command
CP	command post
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CS	chemical smoke
CSS	combat service support
CSSAMO	Combat Service Support Automation Management Office
CSSCS	Combat Service Support Control System
CTA	common tables of allowances
CTG	command training guidance
CTO	Corps Transportation Officer
DA	Department of the Army
DACG	departure airfield control group
D.C.	District of Columbia
DE	directed energy
DEL	deployment equipment list
DET	detachment
DOD	Department of Defense
DOL	Director of Logistics
DS	direct support
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
ELSEC	electronic security
EOC	Emergency Operations Center
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ETA	estimated time of arrival
EW	electronic warfare
F	Fahrenheit
FASCAM	family of scatterable mines
FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Battalion/Brigade and Below
FDC	Fire Direction Center
FM	field manual; frequency modulated
1LT	first lieutenant
1SG	first sergeant
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FSG	forward support group
FTX	field training exercise
FY	fiscal year
G2	Intelligence Staff at Corps and Division
G3	Operations, Plans, and Training Staff at Corps and Division
G4	Logistics Staff at Corps and Division
HHC	headquarters and headquarters company
HN	host nation
HQ	headquarters
hr	hour(s)
HTS	Highway Traffic Section
HUMINT	human intelligence
IAW	in accordance with

IC	installation commander
ICUMO	installation commander unit movement officer
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IPB	installation property book
IR	intelligence requirement
ITEP	individual training and evaluation plan
ITO	Installation Transportation Officer
ITV	in-transit visibility
KIA	killed in action
LAW	light antitank weapon
LDR	leader
LOC	line of communication
LOGSTAT	logistics status
LP	listening post
LT	lieutenant
LTA	local training area
MA	marshaling area
MACOM	major Army command
MAPEX	map exercise
MCA	Movement Control Agency
MCB	Movement Control Battalion
MCS	Maintenance Control Section
MCSR	material condition status report
MCT	movement control team
MDMP	Military Decision Making Process
METL	mission essential task list
METT-T	mission, enemy, terrain, troops and time available
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops-time, civilian
MHE	material handling equipment
MIJI	military intelligence jamming instructions
MIL	master incident list
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
min	minute(s)
mm	millimeter
MOBPLAN	mobilization plan
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urban terrain
MP	military police; multiple purpose
MQS	military qualification standard
MRT	Movement Regulation Team
MSR	main supply route
MST	maintenance support team
MTMC	Military Traffic Management Command
MTP	mission training plan
MTS	Movement Tracking System
NAI	named area of interest
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge

NCS   net control station
NGB   National Guard Bureau
NLT   not later than
No.   number

OC	observer controller
OCONUS	outside continental United States
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OIC	officer in charge
OP	observation post
OPFOR	opposing force
OPLAN	operation plan
OPLOGPLN	Operations Logistics Planner
OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operating tempo
PAO	Public Affairs Office
Pam	pamphlet
PERSTAT	personnel status
PIR	priority intelligence requirement
PLL	prescribed load list
PLT	platoon
PM	Provost Marshal
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
PMCT	Port Movement Control Team
PMO	Provost Marshal's Office
POD	port of debarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, lubricants
POV	privately owned vehicle
PPO	Plans, Programs, and Operations
PSA	port support activity
psi	pounds per square inch
RAA	redeployment assembly area
RC	reserve component
rds	rounds
RP	release point
RSO&I	reception, staging, onward movement, and integration
RSOP	redeployment standing operating procedure
RTD	return-to-duty
S1	Adjutant (US Army
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)
S6	communications/electronics officer
SAW	squad automatic weapon
SCPE	Simplified Collective Protection Equipment
SDO	Staff Duty Officer
SEC	section
SFC	sergeant first class
SGT	sergeant
SIDPERS	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
SIGINT	signal intelligence
SIGSEC	signal security
SITREP	situation report
SJA	Staff Judge Advocate

SM	soldier's manual
SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks
SOI	signal operating instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
SPOD	sea port of debarkation
SPOE	sea port of embarkation
2LT	second lieutenant
SPOTREP	spot report
SRB	Safety Review Board
SRP	Soldiers Readiness Program
SSG	staff sergeant
SSI	signal supplemental instructions
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STAMIS	Standard Army Management Information System
STP	soldier training publication
STRAC	standards in training commission
STRIKEWARN	strike warning
STX	situational training exercise
TAA	tactical assembly area
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators and simulations
TAMCA	Theater Army Movement Control Agency
TC	training circular
TCF	tactical combat force
TDY	temporary duty
TEMPEST	compromising emanations controls
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TG	trainer's guide
TM	technical manual
TOC	Tactical Operations Center
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRC	training readiness conditions
TSB	Theater Support Brigade
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedures
UAA	unit assembly area
UIC	unit identification code
UMC	unit movement officer
UMD	unit movement data
UMO	unit movement officer
UPW	unit proficiency worksheet
US	United States (of America)
USA	United States Army
USACASCOM	United States Army Combined Arms Support Command
USAR	United States Army Reserve
USAREUR	United States Army, Europe
USCS	United States Customs Service
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture

USR	unit status report
VA	Virginia
WARNO	warning order
WESTCOM	Western Command
WIA	wounded in action
wpn	weapon
XO	executive officer

REFERENCES

SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication.

AR 25-400-2. *The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS).* 1 October 2000
AR 190-13. *The Army Physical Security Program.* 30 September 1993
AR 215-1. *Morale, Welfare, and Recreation Activities and Nonappropriated Fund Instrumentalities.* 25 October 1998
AR 220-1. *Unit Status Reporting.* 30 November 2001
AR 220-10. *Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM).* 15 June 1973
AR 350-1. *Army Training.* 1 August 1981
AR 380-5. *Department of the Army Information Security Program.* 27 September 2000
AR 380-19. *Information Systems Security.* 27 February 1998
AR 380-19-1. *(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U).* September 1990
AR 530-1. *Operations Security (OPSEC).* 3 March 1995
AR 600-8-19. *Enlisted Promotions and Reductions.* 2 October 2000
AR 600-8-104. *Military Personnel Information Management/Records.* 27 April 1992
AR 608-1. *Army Community Service Center.* 1 October 1999
AR 608-18. *The Army Family Advocacy Program.* 1 September 1995
AR 614-185. *Requisitions and Assignment Instructions for Officers.* 15 March 1983
AR 614-200. *Enlisted Assignments and Utilization Management.* 12 July 2001
AR 700-84. *Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing.* 15 May 1983
AR 710-2. *Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level.* 31 October 1997
AR 710-3. *Asset and Transaction Reporting System.* 31 March 1998
AR 725-50. *Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System.* 15 November 1995
AR 750-1. *Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations.* 1 August 1994
DA Form 2028. *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms.* 1 February 1974
DA Pamphlet 350-38. *Standards in Weapons Training.* 3 July 1997
DA Pamphlet 350-39. *Standards in Weapons Training (Special Operations Forces).* 3 July 1997
DA Pamphlet 600-8-2. *Standard Installation/Division Personnel System (SIDPERS) Personnel Service Center Level Procedures.* 1 August 1986
DOD 4500.32-R, VOL. 1. *Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures.* 15 March 1987
DOD 4500.32-R, VOL. 2. *Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (MILSTAMP): Transportation Account Codes (TACS).* 15 February 1987
DOD Regulation 4500.9-R, Part III. *Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility).* April 1997
FM 3-0. *Operations.* 14 June 2001
FM 3-3. *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance.* 16 November 1992
FM 3-4. *NBC Protection.* 29 May 1992
FM 3-5. *NBC Decontamination.* 28 July 2000
FM 3-19.4. *Military Police Leaders' Handbook.* 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.30. *Physical Security.* 8 January 2001
FM 3-90.3. *The Mounted Brigade Combat Team.* 1 November 2001
FM 3-100.4. *Environmental Considerations in Military Operations.* 15 June 2000

FM 5-103. *Survivability.* 10 June 1985

FM 5-170. *Engineer Reconnaissance.* 5 May 1998

FM 6-22.5. *Combat Stress.* 23 June 2000

FM 7-8. *Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.* 22 April 1992

FM 7-20. *The Infantry Battalion.* 6 April 1992

FM 10-27-2. *Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations.* 18 June 1991

FM 10-27-3. *Tactics, Techniques and Procedures for Quartermaster Headquarters Operations.* 30 October 1990

FM 12-6. *Personnel Doctrine.* 9 September 1994

FM 16-1. *Religious Support.* 26 May 1995

FM 21-11. *First Aid for Soldiers.* 27 October 1988

FM 21-31. *Topographic Symbols.* 19 June 1961

FM 22-51. *Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control.* 29 September 1994

FM 23-9. *M16A1 Rifle and M16A2 Rifle Marksmanship.* 3 July 1989

FM 24-16. *Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records and Reports.* 7 April 1978

FM 24-18. *Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques.* 30 September 1987

FM 24-22. *Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS).* 30 June 1977

FM 24-33. *Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures.* 17 July 1990

FM 24-35. *(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI".* 2 October 1990

FM 24-35-1. *(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions.* 2 October 1990

FM 25-100. *Training the Force.* 15 November 1988

FM 25-101. *Battle Focused Training.* 30 September 1990

FM 34-1. *Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 27 September 1994

FM 34-54. *Technical Intelligence.* 30 January 1998

FM 34-80. *Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 15 April 1986

FM 34-130. *Intelligence Preparation on the Battlefield.* 8 July 1994

FM 44-8. *Combined Arms for the Air Defense.* 1 June 1999

FM 55-1. *Transportation Operations.* 3 October 1995

FM 55-9. *Unit Air Movement Planning.* 5 April 1993

FM 55-10. *Movement Control.* 9 February 1999

FM 55-15. *Transportation Reference Data.* 27 October 1997

FM 55-30. *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations.* 27 June 1997

FM 55-65. *Strategic Deployment.* 3 October 1995

FM 63-20. *Forward Support Battalion.* 26 February 1990

FM 63-21. *Main Support Battalion.* 7 August 1990

FM 90-26. *Airborne Operations.* 18 December 1990

FM 100-10. *Combat Service Support.* 3 October 1995

FM 100-14. *Risk Management.* 23 April 1998

FM 100-16. *Army Operational Support.* 31 May 1995

FM 100-17. *Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization.* 28 October 1992

FM 100-17-3. *Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration.* 17 March 1999

FM 101-5. *Staff Organization and Operations.* 31 May 1997

FM 101-5-1. *Operational Terms and Graphics.* 30 September 1997

STP 10-92M14-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 57F, Graves Registration Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4.* 28 February 1989

STP 21-1-SMCT. *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks, Skill Level 1.* 1 October 2001

STP 21-24-SMCT. *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4.* 1 October 2001

STP 55-88II-MQS. *Military Qualification Standard II, Transportation Corps (88), Company Grade Officer's Manual.* 30 September 1991

STP 55-88N1-SM. *Soldier's Manual for 88N, Traffic Management Coordinator, Skill Level 1.* 12 July 1993

STP 55-88N24-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 88N, Traffic Management Coordinator.* 12 July 1993

TC 3-34.489. *The Soldier and the Environment.* 8 May 2001

TC 25-1. *Training Land.* 25 June 2001

TC 25-6. *Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System.* 3 October 1995

TC 25-8. *Training Ranges.* 25 February 1992

TC 25-20. *A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews.* 30 September 1993

TM 38-250. *Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments.* 1 March 1997

TM 55-2200-001-12. *Transportability Guidance for Application of Blocking, Bracing and Tiedown Materials for Rail Transport.* 31 May 1978

TRADOC Pamphlet 11-9. *Blueprint of the Battlefield.* 27 April 1990

QUESTIONNAIRE

MISSION TRAINING PLAN (MTP) USER FEED

User feedback is an important link in the process of improving training publications. Your recommendations are requested to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please answer all questions and mail to Commander, USACASCOM, Training Directorate, ATTN: ATCL-AT, Fort Lee, VA 23801-6000.

MTP NUMBER_____DATE_____

MTP TITLE_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (CO, Plt Sgt. etc.)? _____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component? _____

5. What is your unit?   A. CONUS   B. USAREUR
                             C. WESTCOM   D. 8TH USA
                             E. Other (specify)_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

A. Has made training worse. _____

_____

B. Has made training better. _____

_____

C. Has had no effect on training. _____

_____

D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

    A. More difficult. _____

_____

    B. Easier. _____

_____

    C. About the same. _____

_____

    D. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful?

    A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

    B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

    C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

    D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

    E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

    F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

    G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful?

    A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

    B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

    C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

    D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

    E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

    F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

    G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

    A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

    B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

    C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

    D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

    E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand?

A. Chapter 1, Unit Training. _____

_____

B. Chapter 2, Training Matrix. _____

_____

C. Chapter 3, Mission Outline. _____

_____

D. Chapter 4, Training Exercises. _____

_____

E. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines. _____

_____

F. Chapter 6, External Evaluation. _____

_____

G. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES: STX AND FTX.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this intended purpose?

A. They do not prepare the unit at all. _____

_____

B. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. ____

_____

_____

C. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
_____

_____

D. They help but only provide 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
_____

_____

E. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

_____

_____

13. Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added or deleted from the MTP (specify FTX or STX)?

_____

_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

A. Too many pages. _____

_____

B. Hard to read and understand. _____

_____

C. Needs more illustrations. _____

_____

_____

D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

_____

_____

E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

_____

F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

_____

_____

G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

_____

H. Needs more information on normally attached elements.

_____

_____

I. Does not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills. _____

_____

_____

J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

    A. Too many pages. _____

_____

    B. Hard to read and understand. _____

_____

    C. Needs more illustrations. _____

_____

    D. Needs more information on how to set up the exercises. _____

_____

    E. Needs more information on leader training. _____

_____

    F. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercises. _____

_____

    G. Needs more information on support and resources. _____

_____

    H. Needs more information on normally attached elements. _____

_____

    I. Does not interface well with other training products. _____

_____

    J. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

16. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained personnel in or participated in personally?

_____

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP:

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    A. Leave it out. _____

_____

    B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

    C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

_____

    D. The standards are too detailed. _____

_____

    E. The standards are not too detailed enough. _____

_____

    F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

_____

_____

    G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

_____

    H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

      A. Leave it out. _____

_____

      B. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises. _____

_____

      C. Clarify how to use this chapter without the training exercises. _____

_____

      D. The standards are too detailed. _____

_____

      E. The standards are not detailed enough. _____

_____

      F. The standards do not adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime. _____

_____

      G. Do not change; chapter is fine. _____

_____

      H. Do not know or do not have an opinion. _____

_____

19. Additional Comments. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____
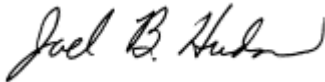
By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0217801

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121688, requirements for ARTEP 55-406-30-MTP.